



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification ⁶ : C12N 15/11, 15/53	A1	(11) International Publication Number: WO 97/37012 (43) International Publication Date: 9 October 1997 (09.10.97)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/AU97/00197 (22) International Filing Date: 27 March 1997 (27.03.97) (30) Priority Data: PN 9031 29 March 1996 (29.03.96) AU (71) Applicants (for all designated States except US): COMMON-WEALTH SCIENTIFIC AND INDUSTRIAL RESEARCH ORGANISATION [AU/AU]; Limestone Avenue, Campbell, ACT 2601 (AU). THE AUSTRALIAN NATIONAL UNIVERSITY [AU/AU]; Acton, ACT 2601 (AU). (72) Inventors; and (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): SURIN, Brian, Peter [AU/AU]; 45 Carbeen Street, Rivett, ACT 2611 (AU). DE FEYTER, Robert, Charles [AU/AU]; 10 Stoble Place, Monash, ACT 2904 (AU). GRAHAM, Michael, Wayne [AU/AU]; 10 Eleventh Avenue, St. Lucia, QLD 4067 (AU). WATERHOUSE, Peter, Michael [AU/AU]; 5 Banjine Street, O'Connor, ACT 2601 (AU). KEESE, Paul, Konrad [AU/AU]; 10 Morehead Street, Curtin, ACT 2605 (AU). SHAHJAHAN, Ali [AU/AU]; 18 Tipiloura Street, Ngun-nawal, ACT 2913 (AU).		(74) Agents: SLATTERY, John, Michael et al.; Davies Collison Cave, 1 Little Collins Street, Melbourne, VIC 3000 (AU). (81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, GH, HU, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ARIPO patent (GH, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG). Published <i>With international search report.</i>
(54) Title: SINGLE-STEP EXCISION MEANS (57) Abstract <p>The present invention is directed to the genetic transformation using multiple genetic sequences, wherein one of said genetic sequences encodes a polypeptide possessing excision activity, specifically a site-specific recombinase activity linked to a transgene unit and the use of this genetic construct in the removal of transgenes therefrom. The present invention provides the means to produce genetically-transformed organisms, in particular plants, in which selectable marker genes have been removed, thereby facilitating multiple sequential genetic transformation events using the same selectable marker gene. Accordingly, the invention provides the means for regulating transgene expression in genetically-manipulated organisms, for example to promote differentiation, de-differentiation, or any unidirectional developmental shift of a target cell which requires the time-specific expression of a particular gene. The invention is particularly suited to the promotion of specific organogeneses in plants using organogenesis-promoting transgenes, wherein the organs which subsequently develop in said plants are genetically transformed with a desired gene but lack organogenesis-promoting transgenes.</p>		

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece			TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	ML	Mali	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MN	Mongolia	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MR	Mauritania	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MW	Malawi	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	MX	Mexico	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NE	Niger	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NL	Netherlands	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NO	Norway	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	NZ	New Zealand		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CN	China		Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CU	Cuba	KZ	Kazakhstan	RO	Romania		
CZ	Czech Republic	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
DE	Germany	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DK	Denmark	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
EE	Estonia	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		

- 1 -

SINGLE-STEP EXCISION MEANS

The present invention relates generally to genetic sequences and their use in the production of genetically-transformed organisms. More particularly, the present invention is directed to the genetic transformation using multiple genetic sequences, wherein one of said genetic sequences encodes a polypeptide possessing excision activity, specifically a site-specific recombinase activity, and uses of same in the removal of transgenes therefrom. The present invention provides the means to selectively remove transgenes from genetically-transformed organisms. The present invention provides the means to produce genetically-transformed organisms, in particular plants, in which selectable marker genes have been removed, thereby facilitating multiple sequential genetic transformation events using the same selectable marker gene. Additionally, the present invention may be used to transiently integrate any genetic material into the chromosome of an organism, such that it may be expressed only while so integrated. Accordingly, this aspect of the invention provides the means for tightly regulating transgene expression in genetically-manipulated organisms, for example to promote differentiation, de-differentiation, or any unidirectional developmental shift of a target cell which requires the time-specific expression of a particular gene. The invention is particularly suited to the promotion of specific organogeneses in plants using organogenesis-promoting transgenes, wherein the organs which subsequently develop in said plants are genetically transformed with a desired gene but lack organogenesis-promoting transgenes.

Bibliographic details of the publications referred to in this specification by author are collected at the end of the description.

Throughout this specification, unless the context requires otherwise, the word "comprise" or variations such as "comprises" or "comprising" will be understood to imply the inclusion of a stated element or integer or group of elements or integers, but not the exclusion of any other element or integer or group of elements or integers.

Improvements in recombinant DNA technology have produced dramatic changes to the nature

- 2 -

of the pharmaceutical and agricultural industries. In particular, methods for the introduction of desirable genetic traits into a wide range of organisms have led to the production of transgenic organisms which are of significant economic value. For example, transgenic crop plants have been produced with improved disease resistance to a range of plant pathogens and insect pests, digestibility and shelf-life, higher productivity and producing novel secondary metabolites.

Known procedures for the production of transgenic organisms mostly involve the introduction thereto of one or more reporter genes and/or selectable marker genes encoding herbicide or antibiotic resistance to facilitate the detection and/or selection of cells which express the gene, however much concern has been raised about the escape of such genes into the environment. Such concerns are of particular significance to transgenic plants which are capable of reproducing asexually or which comprises a significantly out-breeding population pollinated by wind or insects. Clearly, the removal of selectable marker genes from transgenic organisms prior to their release would alleviate such concerns. In the case of reporter genes, their continued expression in a transgenic organism may represent a biological load which compromises productivity gains.

Furthermore, the expression of certain transgenes such as selectable marker genes and reporter genes is often only desirable or necessary during the initial stages of transformation, in order to assess the efficiency of transformation and to identify and/or select transformed cells. Continued expression of such genes in transformed, regenerated tissues may constitute a genetic load on the organism thus obtained. As a consequence, it is often desirable to remove reporter genes from transgenic material prior to commercial application.

25

Furthermore, as each transformation event requires some form of selection, the introduction of multiple novel traits into an organism is limited by the availability of different selectable marker genes. The removal of selectable marker genes following each transformation event would permit the introduction of multiple genes in stages, using the same selectable marker gene.

30

- 3 -

Those skilled in the art are also aware that not all selectable marker genes are of equal utility in the genetic transformation of a particular organism. Clearly, the removal of marker genes following transformation would enable the re-use of an optimum selection system.

5 Known systems for the removal of selected genes from transgenic cells involve the use of site-specific recombination systems, for example the *cre/lox* system (Dale and Ow, 1991; Russell *et al.*, 1992) and the *flp/frt* system (Lloyd and Davis, 1994; Lyznik *et al.*, 1995) which
10 comprise a loci for DNA recombination flanking a selected gene, specifically *lox* or *frt* genetic sequences, combination with a recombinase, *cre* or *flp*, which specifically contacts
said loci, producing site-specific recombination and deletion of the selected gene. In
particular, European Patent No. 0228009 (E.I. Du Pont de Nemours and Company) published
29 April, 1987 discloses a method for producing site-specific recombination of DNA in yeast
utilising the *cre/lox* system, wherein yeast is transformed with a first DNA sequence
comprising a regulatory nucleotide sequence and a *cre* gene and a second DNA sequence
15 comprising a pre-selected DNA segment flanked by two *lox* sites such that, upon activation
of the regulatory nucleotide sequence, expression of the *cre* gene is effected thereby
producing site-specific recombination of DNA and deletion of the pre-selected DNA segment.
United States Patent No. 4,959,317 (E.I. Du Pont de Nemours and Company) filed 29 April
1987 and International Patent Application No. PCT/US90/07295 (E.I. Du Pont de Nemours
20 and Company) filed 19 December, 1990 also disclose the use of the *cre/lox* system in
eukaryotic cells.

Furthermore, International Patent Application No. PCT/US92/05640 (The United States of
America as represented by the Secretary of Agriculture, USA) filed 6 July, 1992 discloses
25 a method of excising and segregating selectable marker genes in higher plants using site-specific recombination systems such as the *cre/lox* or *flp/frt* systems wherein plant cells are
first transformed with a recombinant vector which contains a plant-expressible selectable
marker gene operably linked to loci for DNA recombination and the selectable marker gene
is subsequently excised from transformed plants by further transforming the plant cells with
30 a second recombinant vector which contains a plant-expressible, site-specific recombinase

- 4 -

gene or, alternatively, by cross-pollinating the first-mentioned transformed plant with a second transformed plant which expresses a recombinant site-specific recombinase. As a consequence, the selectable marker gene contained in the first-mentioned transformed plant is excised. According to PCT/US92/05640, the recombinant site-specific recombinase gene is also linked to a selectable marker gene which must be removed to produce a plant which is free of selectable marker transgenes. This approach, therefore, requires at least one generation of conventional plant breeding to remove the second selectable marker gene.

A requirement for the operation of site-specific recombination systems is that the loci for DNA recombination and the recombinase enzyme contact each other *in vivo*, which means that they must both be present in the same cell. The prior art means for excising unwanted transgenes from genetically-transformed cells all involve either multiple transformation events or sexual crossing to produce a single cell comprising *both* the loci for DNA recombination and the site-specific recombinase.

15

Where multiple transformations are performed to achieve this end, several selectable marker genes must also be employed, thereby making their removal from the transformed plant material more difficult. As International Patent Application No. PCT/US92/05640 (USDA) demonstrates, the removal of unwanted selectable marker genes following multiple transformation events, requires a resort to conventional breeding approaches. These approaches thus involve extensive manipulation of transgenic material.

Furthermore, since all of the prior art requires some degree of breeding, the approaches taken are not generally applicable to asexually propagating species or clonally-propagated genetic stocks.

In work leading up to the present invention, the inventors sought to develop an improved system for the removal, deletion or excision of transgenes from genetically-transformed cells, which overcomes the disadvantages of the prior art. Accordingly, the inventors have produced a genetic construct which facilitates the precise excision of genetic material in a

- 5 -

single generation, without the need for sexual crossing. The inventors have further defined an efficient method for the single-step removal, deletion or excision of transgenes, in particular selectable marker genes, reporter genes, hormone-biosynthesis genes, hormone-encoding genes or genetic sequences which encode one or more polypeptides capable of
5 regulating hormone levels, from transformed cells.

Accordingly, one aspect of the present invention provides a genetic construct comprising a first expression cassette which contains a recombinase genetic unit linked to a transgene unit, wherein said expression cassette is flanked by two recombination loci placed upstream and
10 downstream thereof.

The present invention is particularly useful in the removal, deletion or excision of transgenes from vegetatively- or clonally propagated species such as, but not limited to, potatoes, sweet potatoes, jerusalem artichoke, taro or yams, fibre or wood tree crops such as *Eucalyptus ssp.*
15 or *Pinus ssp.*, aspen, ornamental plants such as roses, fuschias, azaleas carnations, camelias or gardenias, citrus crops such as oranges, lemons, grapefruit, tangerines or limes, fruit tress such as apples or pears, berry fruits such as strawberry, raspberry, loganberry or blackberry, tropical crops such as sugarcane, tobacco, bananas, plantain or pineapples or asparagus, amongst others.

20

The invention also permits the introduction of several unlinked transgenes into a single cell via independent transformation events, using the same selectable marker gene or reporter gene.

- 25 Reference herein to a "gene" or "genes" is to be taken in its broadest context and includes:
- (i) a classical genomic gene consisting of transcriptional and/or translational regulatory sequences and/or a coding region and/or non-translated sequences (i.e. introns, 5'- and 3'- untranslated sequences); and/or
 - (ii) mRNA or cDNA corresponding to the coding regions (i.e. exons) and 5'- and 3'-
30 untranslated sequences of the gene; and/or

- 6 -

(iii) a structural region corresponding to the coding regions (i.e. exons) optionally further comprising untranslated sequences and/or a heterologous promoter sequence which consists of transcriptional and/or translational regulatory regions capable of conferring expression characteristics on said structural region.

5

The term "gene" is also used to describe synthetic or fusion molecules encoding all or part of a functional product.

As used herein, the term "transgene" shall be taken to refer to any nucleic acid molecule, including, but not limited to DNA, cDNA, mRNA, tRNA, rRNA, synthetic oligonucleotide molecule, ribozyme, antisense molecule, co-suppression molecule, structural gene, wherein said nucleic acid molecule is introduced into the genome of a cell as an addition to the complement of genetic material present in said cell in the absence of said nucleic acid molecule. In the present context, a transgene is generally integrated into one or more chromosome(s) of the cell, until it is excised therefrom according to the performance of the present invention.

The term "oligonucleotide" refers to any polymer comprising the nucleotides adenine, cytidine, guanine, thymidine, or inosine, or functional analogues or derivatives thereof, capable of being incorporated into a polynucleotide molecule.

25

The term "synthetic oligonucleotide" refers to any oligonucleotide as hereinbefore defined which is produced by synthetic means, whether or not it is provided directly from said synthetic means.

Those skilled in the art will be aware that the term "ribozyme" refers to a synthetic RNA molecule which comprises a hybridising region complementary to two regions, each of at least 5 contiguous nucleotide bases in the target sense mRNA. In addition, ribozymes possess highly specific endoribonuclease activity, which autocatalytically cleaves the target sense mRNA. A complete description of the function of ribozymes is presented by Haseloff and

30

- 7 -

Gerlach (1988) and contained in International Patent Application No. WO89/05852. The present invention extends to ribozymes which target any sense mRNA, thereby hybridising to said sense mRNA and cleaving it, such that it is no longer capable of being translated to synthesise a functional polypeptide product, subject to the proviso that said ribozyme is
5 contained within a genetic construct according to any embodiment described herein.

An "antisense molecule" is an RNA molecule which is transcribed from the complementary strand of a nuclear gene to that which is normally transcribed to produce a "sense" mRNA molecule capable of being translated into a polypeptide or peptide sequence. The antisense
10 molecule is therefore complementary to the sense mRNA, or a part thereof. Although not limiting the mode of action of the antisense molecules of the present invention to any specific mechanism, the antisense RNA molecule possesses the capacity to form a double-stranded mRNA by base pairing with the sense mRNA, which may prevent translation of the sense mRNA and subsequent synthesis of a polypeptide gene product.

15

"Co-suppression" as used herein refers to the reduction in expression of an endogenous gene in a cell that occurs when one or more copies of said gene, or one or more copies of a substantially similar gene are introduced into the cell, regardless of whether or not said endogenous gene is integrated into the chromosome(s) of the cell or maintained as an episome
20 or plasmid therein.

The term "co-suppression molecule" shall be taken to refer to any isolated nucleic acid molecule which is used to achieve co-suppression of an endogenous gene in a cell as hereinbefore defined.

25

The term "transgenic organism" shall be taken to refer to any organism that has a transgene as hereinbefore defined introduced into its genome.

The term "selectable marker gene" shall be taken to refer to any gene as hereinbefore defined,
30 the expression of which in a cell may be utilised to detect and/or select for the presence of

- 8 -

a transgene to which said selectable marker gene is linked or which said selectable marker gene has been co-transformed.

The term "reporter gene" shall be taken to refer to any gene which, when expressed, produces a polypeptide or enzyme capable of being assayed, for example the bacterial chloramphenicol acetyltransferase gene, β -glucuronidase gene and firefly luciferase gene, amongst others. Those skilled in the art will be aware that the coding region of a reporter gene may be placed in operable connection with a promoter sequence such that expression of said reporter gene may be monitored to determine the pattern of expression regulated by said promoter sequence.

As used herein, the terms "hormone gene", "hormone-biosynthesis gene", "hormone-encoding gene", "genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels" or similar term, shall be taken to refer to any gene as hereinbefore defined, in particular a structural gene, which encodes a polypeptide hormone molecule, or alternatively, a gene or structural gene which, when expressed, produces a polypeptide which comprises an enzymatic activity which synthesizes a hormone molecule or a precursor molecule thereof.

As used herein, the term "hormone" encompasses any chemical substance secreted by an endocrine gland of an animal or any plant growth regulatory substance such as, but not limited to, auxins, cytokinins, ethylene, gibberellins, abscisic acid, steroids, prostaglandins, oestrogens, testosterone and progesterones, amongst others.

The term "expression cassette" as used herein refers to a nucleic acid molecule comprising one or more genetic sequences or genes suitable for expression in a cell such as a eukaryotic or prokaryotic cell. In its present context, an expression cassette is particularly preferred to be suitable for expression in a eukaryotic cell such as a plant, animal or yeast cell. In a most particularly preferred embodiment, an expression cassette is suitable for expression in a plant cell.

- 9 -

As used herein, the term "recombinase genetic unit" shall be taken to refer to any genetic sequence which comprises a recombinase gene in a format suitable for constitutive or inducible expression in a cell.

- 5 Hereinafter the term "recombinase gene" shall be taken to refer to a gene as hereinbefore defined which comprises a sequence of nucleotides which encodes or is complementary to a sequence of nucleotides which encodes a site-specific recombinase enzyme or polypeptide having site-specific recombinase activity.
- 10 A "site-specific recombinase" is understood by those skilled in the relevant art to mean an enzyme or polypeptide molecule which is capable of binding to a specific nucleotide sequence, in a nucleic acid molecule preferably a DNA sequence, hereinafter referred to as a "recombination locus" and induce a cross-over event in the nucleic acid molecule in the vicinity of said recombination locus. Preferably, a site-specific recombinase will induce
15 excision of intervening DNA located between two such recombination loci.

The terms "recombination locus" and "recombination loci" shall be taken to refer to any sequence of nucleotides which is recognized and/or bound by a site-specific recombinase as hereinbefore defined.

20

- As used herein the term "transgene unit" shall be taken to refer to any genetic sequence which comprises a transgene as hereinbefore defined, in particular a structural gene selected from the list comprising reporter gene, selectable marker gene, hormone biosynthesis gene or hormone-encoding gene or a genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of
25 regulating hormone levels, or a ribozyme, antisense molecule, co-suppression molecule or other nucleic acid molecule.

According to this embodiment of the present invention, it is preferred that the recombinase genetic unit comprise a genetic sequence which encodes a site-specific recombinase placed
30 upstream or 5' of a terminator sequence and operably under the control of a first promoter

- 10 -

sequence.

The term "terminator" refers to a DNA sequence at the end of a transcriptional unit which signals termination of transcription. Terminators are 3'-non-translated DNA sequences
5 containing a polyadenylation signal, which facilitates the addition of polyadenylate sequences to the 3'-end of a primary transcript. Terminators active in plant cells are known and described in the literature. They may be isolated from bacteria, fungi, viruses, animals and/or plants. Examples of terminators particularly suitable for use in the genetic constructs of the present invention include the nopaline synthase (NOS) gene terminator of
10 *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*, the terminator of the Cauliflower mosaic virus (CaMV) 35S gene, the *zein* gene terminator from *Zea mays*, the ribulose -1, 5-biphosphate carboxylase small subunit gene (*rbcS 1a*) terminator, and the isopentenyladenine transferase (*ipt*) terminator, amongst others.

15 Reference herein to a "promoter" is to be taken in its broadest context and includes the transcriptional regulatory sequences of a classical genomic gene, including the TATA box which is required for accurate transcription initiation, with or without a CCAAT box sequence and additional regulatory elements (i.e. upstream activating sequences, enhancers and silencers) which alter gene expression in response to developmental and/or external
20 stimuli, or in a tissue-specific manner. A promoter is usually, but not necessarily, positioned upstream or 5', of a structural gene, the expression of which it regulates. Furthermore, the regulatory elements comprising a promoter are usually positioned within 2 kb of the start site of transcription of the gene.

25 In the present context, the term "promoter" is also used to describe a synthetic or fusion molecule, or derivative which confers, activates or enhances expression of a structural gene or recombinase gene in a cell, in particular a plant cell. Preferred promoters may contain additional copies of one or more specific regulatory elements, to further enhance expression of the gene and/or to alter the spatial expression and/or temporal expression. For example,
30 regulatory elements which confer copper inducibility may be placed adjacent to a heterologous

- 11 -

promoter sequence driving expression of a structural gene or recombinase gene, thereby conferring copper inducibility on the expression of said gene.

Placing a gene operably under the control of a promoter sequence means positioning the said gene such that its expression is controlled by the promoter sequence. Promoters are generally positioned 5' (upstream) to the genes that they control. In the construction of heterologous promoter/structural gene combinations it is generally preferred to position the promoter at a distance from the gene transcription start site that is approximately the same as the distance between that promoter and the gene it controls in its natural setting, i.e., the gene from which the promoter is derived. As is known in the art, some variation in this distance can be accommodated without loss of promoter function. Similarly, the preferred positioning of a regulatory sequence element with respect to a heterologous gene to be placed under its control is defined by the positioning of the element in its natural setting, i.e., the genes from which it is derived. Again, as is known in the art, some variation in this distance can also occur.

Examples of promoters suitable for use in genetic constructs of the present invention include viral, fungal, animal and plant derived promoters. In a particularly preferred embodiment, the promoter is capable of conferring expression in a eukaryotic cell, especially a plant cell. The promoter may regulate the expression of a gene constitutively, or differentially with respect to the tissue in which expression occurs or, with respect to the developmental stage at which expression occurs, or in response to external stimuli such as physiological stresses, or plant pathogens, or metal ions, amongst others. Examples of preferred promoters according to the present invention include, but are not limited to the CaMV 35S promoter, NOS promoter, octopine synthase (OCS) promoter, Sc1 promoter or Sc4 promoter from subterranean clover stunt virus, seed-specific promoter such as the vicillin promoter or a derivative thereof, floral-specific promoter such as *apetala-3*, anther-specific promoter, tapetum-specific promoter, root-specific promoter, leaf-specific promoter such as the *Arabidopsis thaliana rbcS 1a* promoter or other *rbcS* promoter sequence, stem-specific promoter, light-inducible promoter such as the *Arabidopsis thaliana rbcS 1a* promoter or other *rbcS* promoter sequence, metal-inducible promoter such as the copper-inducible

- 12 -

promoter, heat-shock promoter or other environmentally-inducible promoter such as those induced by anaerobiosis or hypoxia or wound-inducible promoter, amongst others. Those skilled in the art will recognise that the choice of promoter will depend upon the nature of the cell being transformed and when expression of the recombinase, structural gene or other gene
5 contained in the genetic construct of the invention is required.

Those skilled in the art will be aware that, in order for a site-specific recombinase polypeptide or enzyme to function in a eukaryotic cell it must be brought into contact with the substrate molecule upon which it acts (i.e. a nucleic acid molecule such as DNA). Furthermore, it is
10 often desirable to ensure that said recombinase is localised in the nucleus of a eukaryotic cell, for example where the recombinase is required to be expressed in stably-transformed cells where the target DNA upon which the recombinase acts has been incorporated or integrated into the genome of the cell.

15 Accordingly, the recombinase genetic unit of the genetic construct described herein may be further modified in a particularly preferred embodiment to include a genetic sequence which encodes a nuclear localisation signal placed in-frame with the coding region of the recombinase gene. More preferably, the genetic sequence encoding a nuclear localisation signal is placed in-frame at the 5'-terminus or the 3'-terminus, but most preferably at the 5'-
20 terminus, of the coding region of the recombinase gene.

By "in-frame" means that the genetic sequence which encodes the nuclear localisation signal is in the same open reading frame as the genetic sequence which encodes the recombinase with no intervening stop codons, such that when the transcript of the recombinase genetic unit
25 is translated, a single fusion polypeptide is produced which comprises a sequence of amino acids corresponding to the summation of the individual amino acid sequences of the nuclear localisation signal and the recombinase polypeptides.

In the context of the present invention, the essential feature of the recombinase gene is the
30 structural gene region or a derivative thereof which at least encodes a functional site-specific

- 13 -

recombinase enzyme. Accordingly, the structural region of a recombinase gene may be any nucleic acid molecule which is capable of encoding a polypeptide having recombinase activity, optionally further comprising one or more intron sequences, 5'-untranslated sequence or 3'-untranslated sequence.

5

Preferred recombinase genes according to the present invention include the *cre* gene (Abremski *et al*, 1983) and *flp* gene (Golic *et al*, 1989; O'Gorman *et al*, 1991). In a particularly preferred embodiment of the present invention, the recombinase gene is the *cre* gene or a homologue, analogue or derivative thereof which is capable of encoding a
10 functional site-specific recombinase.

The relative orientation of two recombination loci in a nucleic acid molecule or genetic construct may influence whether the intervening genetic sequences are deleted or excised or, alternatively, inverted when a site-specific recombinase acts thereupon. In a particularly
15 preferred embodiment of the present invention, the recombination loci are oriented in a configuration relative to each other such as to promote the deletion or excision of intervening genetic sequences by the action of a site-specific recombinase upon, or in the vicinity of said recombination loci.

20 Preferred recombination loci according to the present invention are *lox* and *frt*, to be used in combination with *cre* and *flp* recombinase genes, respectively. Other recombinase/recombination loci systems are not excluded. In a most particularly preferred embodiment, however, the recombination loci are *lox* sites, such as *lox P*, *lox B*, *Lox L* or *lox R* or functionally-equivalent homologues, analogues or derivatives thereof.

25

Lox sites may be isolated from bacteriophage or bacteria by methods known in the art (Hoess *et al*, 1982). It will also be known to those skilled in the relevant art that *lox* sites may be produced by synthetic means, optionally comprising one or more nucleotide substitutions, deletions or additions thereto.

30

- 14 -

Also according to this embodiment of the present invention, the transgene unit preferably comprises a structural gene which encodes a polypeptide, for example the coding region of a gene, placed upstream or 5' of a terminator sequence and operably under the control of a second promoter sequence.

5

The terminator and promoter sequences may be any terminator or promoter referred to *supra* or exemplified herein, amongst others.

The structural gene of the genetic construct of the invention may be any structural gene.

10 Preferably, the structural gene is a selectable marker gene, reporter gene, hormone-biosynthesis gene, hormone-encoding gene or a genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels.

Preferred reporter genes are those genes for which their expression is capable of being
15 assayed, for example the bacterial chloramphenicol acetyl transferase (CAT) gene, bacterial β -glucuronidase (*uidA*, GUS or *gusA*) gene, firefly luciferase (*luc*) gene, green fluorescent protein (*gfp*) gene or other gene which is at least useful as an indicator of expression.

Preferred selectable marker genes include genes which when expressed are capable of
20 conferring resistance on a cell to a compound which would, absent expression of said selectable marker gene, prevent or slow cell proliferation or result in cell death. Preferred selectable marker genes contemplated herein include, but are not limited to antibiotic-resistance genes such as those conferring resistance to ampicillin, Claforan, gentamycin, G-418, hygromycin, kanamycin, neomycin, spectinomycin, tetracycline or a derivative or
25 related compound thereof or alternatively, herbicide-resistance genes such as those conferring resistance to the compounds atrazine, Basta, bialaphos, bromoxinol, Buctril, 2,4-D, glyphosate, phosphinothricin, suphonylurea or a derivative or related compound thereof, amongst others. The compound names "Basta", "Buctril", "claforan" and "G-418" are trademarks.

30

- 15 -

In a particularly preferred embodiment, the selectable marker gene is the neomycin phosphotransferase gene *npt II*, which when expressed confers resistance on a cell to neomycin and kanamycin and related compounds thereof. More preferably, the *nptII* selectable marker gene is placed operably under the control of a promoter suitable for
5 expression in a plant cell.

Preferred hormone-biosynthesis genes, hormone-encoding genes or genetic sequences which encodes one or more polypeptides capable of regulating hormone levels are those genes which encode a polypeptide or enzyme which is involved in at least one biosynthetic step which
10 leads to the production of a plant growth regulatory substance, or at least encode a regulatory polypeptide which is capable of altering the levels of a plant growth regulatory substance in a plant cell.

More preferably, the hormone-biosynthesis or hormone-encoding gene or genetic sequence
15 which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels of the invention, encodes a polypeptide or enzyme which catalyses at least one biosynthetic step leading to the production of a plant growth regulatory substance selected from the list comprising auxins, gibberellins, cytokinins, abscisic acid and ethylene, amongst others, or alternatively, encodes a polypeptide which is capable of altering the levels of one or more of said plant growth
20 regulatory substances in a plant cell.

In a particularly preferred embodiment of the invention, the hormone-biosynthesis or hormone-encoding gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels is a cytokinin gene, more particularly the isopentenyladenine
25 transferase or *ipt* gene. Genetic constructs comprising the *ipt* gene are described herein as "Example 9".

For the present purpose, homologues of a genetic sequence, in particular a structural gene, recombinase gene or recombination locus, shall be taken to refer to an isolated nucleic acid
30 molecule which is substantially the same as, or is functionally identical to, a nucleic acid

- 16 -

molecule of the present invention or its complementary nucleotide sequence, notwithstanding the occurrence within said sequence, of one or more nucleotide substitutions, insertions, deletions, or rearrangements.

5 "Analogues" of a genetic sequence, in particular a structural gene, recombinase gene or recombination locus shall be taken to refer to an isolated nucleic acid molecule which is substantially the same as, or is functionally identical to, a nucleic acid molecule of the present invention or its complementary nucleotide sequence, notwithstanding the occurrence of any non-nucleotide constituents not normally present in said isolated nucleic acid molecule, for
10 example carbohydrates, radiochemicals including radionucleotides, reporter molecules such as, but not limited to DIG, alkaline phosphate or horseradish peroxidase, amongst others.

"Derivatives" of a nucleotide sequence, in particular a structural gene, recombinase gene or recombination locus shall be taken to refer to any isolated nucleic acid molecule which
15 contains significant sequence similarity to said sequence or a part thereof. Generally, the nucleotide sequence of the present invention may be subjected to mutagenesis to produce single or multiple nucleotide substitutions, deletions and/or insertions. Nucleotide insertional derivatives of the nucleotide sequence of the present invention include 5' and 3' terminal fusions as well as intra-sequence insertions of single or multiple nucleotides or nucleotide
20 analogues. Insertional nucleotide sequence variants are those in which one or more nucleotides or nucleotide analogues are introduced into a predetermined site in the nucleotide sequence of said sequence, although random insertion is also possible with suitable screening of the resulting product being performed. Deletional variants are characterised by the removal of one or more nucleotides from the nucleotide sequence. Substitutional nucleotide
25 variants are those in which at least one nucleotide in the sequence has been removed and a different nucleotide or nucleotide analogue inserted in its place.

In an alternative preferred embodiment of the present invention, there is provided a genetic construct comprising a first expression cassette which contains a recombinase genetic unit
30 linked to a transgene unit as hereinbefore defined, wherein said expression cassette is flanked

- 17 -

by two recombinant loci upstream and downstream thereof and wherein said recombinase genetic unit further comprises the coding region of a *cre* gene or a homologue, analogue or derivative thereof and said recombination loci are further defined as *loxP* sites or a homologue, analogue or derivative thereof.

5

In a further alternative preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a genetic construct comprising a first expression cassette which contains a recombinase genetic unit linked to a transgene unit as hereinbefore defined, wherein said first expression cassette is flanked by two recombinant loci upstream and downstream thereof and wherein said
10 recombinase genetic unit further comprises a genetic sequence which encodes a nuclear localisation signal placed in-frame with the coding region of a *cre* gene or a homologue, analogue or derivative thereof and said recombination loci are further defined as *loxP* sites or a homologue, analogue or derivative thereof.

15 Preferably, the nuclear localisation signal is the SV40 T-antigen type nuclear localisation signal described by Kalderon *et al* (1984).

Those skilled in the art will be aware of how to produce the genetic construct of the invention and of the requirements for obtaining the expression thereof, when so desired, in a specific
20 cell or cell-type under the conditions desired. In particular, it will be known to those skilled in the art that the genetic manipulations required to perform the present invention may require the propagation of the genetic construct described herein or a derivative thereof in a prokaryotic cell such as an *E. coli* cell.

25 To prevent premature excision events, the recombinase gene of the invention should preferably not be expressed to produce a functional recombinase enzyme during these propagation steps and in any case, until so desired. For example, the recombinase gene may be selected or modified such that it is not expressed in a prokaryote cell, for example by modifying codons within the gene to a codon usage not recognised by the prokarote cell.

30

- 18 -

Means for preventing the expression of a recombinase gene in a prokaryotic cell whilst allowing its expression in a eukaryotic cell include, but are not limited to the use of a specific promoter which is not recognised by prokaryotic DNA-dependant RNA polymerases, the use of a highly-regulated inducible promoter such as a copper-inducible promoter under non-inducing conditions, the insertion of an intron sequence into the coding region of the recombinase gene, or the insertion of spurious stop codons into a structural gene such that the protein is not translated in a prokaryotic cell but may be translated in a eukaryotic tRNA suppressor mutant cell or organism which is capable of inserting an amino acid at positions where said spurious stop codons occur. Such means for preventing expression of genetic sequences in prokaryotic cells are well-known to those skilled in the art. The present invention extends to the use of all means for preventing expression of the recombinase gene in a prokaryotic cell.

Furthermore, expression of the recombinase gene or the production of a functional recombinase enzyme should preferably occur only when so desired in a eukaryotic cell, tissue, organ or organism. For example, wherein the genetic construct of the invention comprises a structural gene which is a selectable marker gene, expression of the recombinase gene will not normally be required until selection of transformed cells or tissue carrying the genetic construct of the invention has taken place. In many such instances where a cell has been transformed with a genetic construct of the present invention and subsequently selected, expression of the recombinase gene will only be required when regeneration of tissues, organs or the whole organism from the transformed cell has commenced or been completed.

In a further example, wherein the transgene of the transgene unit is a hormone-biosynthesis or hormone-encoding gene or a genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels, expression of said transgene preferably promotes a developmental transition in the transformed cell, for example a transition which leads to differentiation or de-differentiation of cells. In plant cells wherein the structural gene encodes a polypeptide which catalyses the biosynthesis of a plant growth regulatory molecule comprising a cytokinin

- 19 -

such as isopentenyladenine, expression of said structural gene preferably leads to the initiation of adventitious shoot formation. Alternatively, wherein the structural gene encodes a polypeptide which catalyses the biosynthesis of a plant growth regulatory molecule comprising an auxin such as IAA, expression of said structural gene preferably leads to the initiation of
5 adventitious root formation. In these cases, it is important that expression of the recombinase be delayed, or at least minimised, until the developmental transition has in fact occurred and expression of the transgene is no longer required, expression of the recombinase may be induced, thereby leading to excision of the transgene.

10 In a further example, wherein the genetic construct of the invention comprises a structural gene which is a reporter gene, expression of the recombinase gene will not normally be required until the detection of cells which express the reporter gene has taken place.

Those skilled in the art will readily be able to determine the appropriate time when expression
15 of the recombinase gene in a transformed cell, tissue, organ or organism is desirable.

Means for preventing the expression of the recombinase gene in a eukaryotic cell, tissue, organ or organism until so desired includes the use of a tissue-specific promoter which is only capable of conferring significant expression on the recombinase gene in regenerated or
20 regenerating tissues, organs or organisms but not in isolated cells or cell masses or undifferentiated cells or cell masses.

Examples of suitable promoters for use in transgenic plant tissues, organs or organisms for limiting the expression of the recombinase gene thereto include a seed-specific promoter such
25 as the vicillin promoter or a derivative thereof, floral-specific promoter such as *apetala-3*, anther-specific promoter, tapetum-specific promoter, root-specific promoter, leaf-specific promoter such as the *Arabidopsis thaliana rbcS 1a* promoter or other *rbcS* promoter sequence or stem-specific promoter, meristem-specific promoter, amongst other promoter sequences.

30 Additional means for preventing the expression of the recombinase gene in a eukaryotic cell

- 20 -

include the use of an inducible promoter sequence to drive expression thereof, such that no significant recombinase activity is detectable until induction of recombinase gene expression has taken place.

- 5 Examples of inducible promoter sequences suitable for use in plants which may be used to control recombinase gene expression include, but are not limited to a light-inducible promoter such as the *Arabidopsis thaliana rbcS 1a* promoter or other *rbcS* promoter sequence, metal-inducible promoter such as the copper-inducible promoter, heat-shock promoter or other environmentally-inducible promoter such as those induced by anaerobiosis or hypoxia or
10 wound-inducible promoter, amongst others.

The present invention extends to the use of all means for preventing expression of the recombinase gene until so desired in a eukaryotic cell, such as a plant, animal or yeast cell.

- 15 Accordingly, in a particularly preferred embodiment of the present invention, the recombinase gene is modified such that significant expression thereof is limited to a plant or animal tissue, organ or organism, but does not occur in prokaryotic cells such as the bacteria *E. coli* or *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* or in isolated cells or cell masses or undifferentiated cells or cell masses derived from eukaryotes.

20

- More particularly, said recombinase gene is modified by the insertion of an intron sequence therein, which is not removed from the primary transcript produced in bacterial cells, thereby resulting in the production of an inactive recombinase enzyme in such cells. In contrast, eukaryotic cells do possess the means for correctly processing primary transcripts which
25 contain an intron sequence and, as a consequence, the intron inserted into a recombinase gene according to this embodiment will be removed from the primary transcript thereof, resulting in the expression of an active recombinase enzyme in eukaryotic cells capable of transcribing said recombinase gene.

- 30 Even more particularly, said recombinase gene, modified as described herein, is placed under

- 21 -

the control of the *Arabidopsis thaliana rbcS 1a* promoter or the Sc4 promoter.

The genetic construct of the present invention is particularly suitable for the transformation of a eukaryotic cell to introduce novel genetic traits thereto, in addition to the provision of
5 resistance characteristics described herein to herbicides, antibiotics or other toxic compounds. Such additional novel traits may be introduced in a separate genetic construct or, alternatively on the same DNA molecule as the genetic constructs already described herein. Those skilled in the art will recognise the significant advantages, in particular in terms of reduced genetic manipulations and tissue culture requirements and increased cost-effectiveness, of including
10 genetic sequences which encode such additional traits and the first expression cassette described herein, in a single genetic construct.

Accordingly, an alternative embodiment of the present invention provides a genetic construct comprising:

- 15 (i) a first expression cassette which contains a recombinase genetic unit linked to a transgene unit as hereinbefore defined;
- (ii) two recombinant loci flanking said first expression cassette; and
- (iii) a second expression cassette comprising a transgene for introduction into a eukaryotic cell such as a plant cell or animal cell, wherein said second expression
20 cassette is juxtaposed to one of said recombination loci or separated therefrom by a spacer region of at least 2 nucleotides in length and wherein said second expression cassette is further separated from said first expression cassette.

The distance separating the second expression cassette and the first expression cassette flanked
25 by recombination loci may be varied and, for the present purpose, it is essential only that sufficient distance separate said second expression cassette from said first expression cassette flanked by recombination loci such that, when excision of the expression cassette has taken place, said transgene of the second expression cassette is not also excised.

30 Preferably, the spacer region is at least 6 nucleotides in length, more preferably at least 10

- 22 -

nucleotides in length and still more preferably at least 50 nucleotides in length.

According to this embodiment, the transgene of the second expression cassette may be any gene as hereinbefore defined, including genes which encode antisense, ribozyme or co-suppression molecules and is not in any way to be limited to a transgene capable of being translated into a functional enzyme or polypeptide.

In an alternative embodiment, the genetic construct of the present invention is further modified such that the first expression cassette flanked by recombinant loci is inserted into, or embedded within, a second expression cassette which comprises a transgene and terminator placed operably under the control of a promoter sequence, wherein said insertion prevents the expression of the second expression cassette.

The transgene of the second expression cassette may be any transgene as hereinbefore defined. In a particularly preferred embodiment of the invention, the transgene of the second expression cassette is a structural gene, for example a reporter gene, selectable marker gene, hormone-biosynthesis gene or hormone-encoding gene or a genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide which regulates hormone levels, as hereinbefore defined, or other structural gene sequence.

20

Preferred reporter genes are selected from the list comprising CAT, GUS, *luc* or *gfp* genes, amongst others. Additional transgenes are not excluded. Suitable promoters or terminators are those described previously.

25 According to this embodiment of the invention, the first expression cassette flanked by recombination loci may be inserted into the second expression cassette at any site which disrupts expression of the transgene of said second expression cassette, such as between the promoter and transgene, or within the transgene sequence.

30 In a most preferred embodiment, the first expression cassette flanked by recombination loci

- 23 -

is inserted between the promoter and the transgene of the second expression cassette.

The present invention extends to all genetic constructs which comprise the specific arrangements of first expression cassette flanked by recombination loci defined herein and
5 additional genes for introduction into a eukaryotic cell and/or expression therein.

In a further embodiment of the present invention, the genetic construct of the present invention is also suitable for integration into the genome of a cell in which it is expressed. Those skilled in the art will be aware that, in order to achieve integration of a genetic
10 sequence or genetic construct into the genome of a host cell, certain additional genetic sequences may be required. For example, the successful integration of DNA into the genome of a plant cell mediated by *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* requires the presence of one or more left and/or right T-DNA border regions flanking the genetic sequence to be integrated.

15 Accordingly, the genetic construct of the invention may optionally further comprise additional genetic sequences as required for its integration into the genome of a eukaryotic cell, in particular a plant cell.

Wherein the genetic construct of the invention is intended for use in plants, it is particularly
20 preferred that it be further modified for use in *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation of plants by the inclusion of one or more left and/or right T-DNA border sequences. To facilitate *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation, the first expression cassette flanked by recombination loci and, where applicable, at least the transgene of the second expression cassette, are usually placed between the left and/or right T-DNA border sequences, if more
25 than one of said sequences is present.

Although intended for the transformation of a eukaryotic organism and/or the expression of genes contained therein, the genetic constructs of the present invention may need to be
30 propagated in a prokaryotic organism such as the bacteria *Escherichia coli* or *Agrobacterium*

- 24 -

tumefaciens. Accordingly, the genetic constructs described herein may further comprise genetic sequences corresponding to a bacterial origin of replication and/or a selectable marker gene such as an antibiotic-resistance gene, suitable for the maintenance and replication of said genetic construct in a prokaryotic organism. Such sequences are well-known in the art.

5 Usually, an origin of replication or a selectable marker gene suitable for use in bacteria is physically-separated from those genetic sequences contained in the genetic construct which are intended to be expressed or transferred to a eukaryotic cell, or integrated into the genome of a eukaryotic cell.

10 The present invention extends to all genetic constructs essentially as defined herein, which include further genetic sequences intended for the maintenance and/or replication of said genetic construct in prokaryotes and/or the integration of said genetic construct or a part thereof into the genome of a eukaryotic cell or organism.

15 The genetic constructs of the present invention are useful in producing genetically-transformed cells and/or for the removal of transgenes from genetically-transformed organisms, in particular eukaryotes such as plants and animals. More particularly, the genetic constructs are used for the transformation of plants with selectable marker genes and/or reporter genes and the subsequent excision in a single-step of said genes.

20

Accordingly, a further aspect of the present invention provides a method of removing a transgene from a cell transformed with the genetic construct described according to any of the embodiments herein, said method comprising expressing the recombinase genetic unit of said genetic construct for a time and under conditions sufficient for a site-specific recombinase to

25 be expressed and at least excise the first expression cassette of said genetic construct or a fragment thereof sufficient to disrupt expression of the transgene of said first expression cassette.

Preferably, the transgene is a selectable marker gene or a reporter gene or a hormone-
30 biosynthesis gene or hormone-encoding gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide

- 25 -

capable of regulating hormone levels, as hereinbefore defined.

In an alternative embodiment, wherein the transgene of the first expression cassette is to be expressed prior to its excision, this aspect of the invention relates to a method of transiently

5 expressing a transgene in a stably transformed cell, said method comprising:

- (i) stably transforming said cell with a genetic construct comprising a first expression cassette flanked by recombination loci, optionally further comprising a second expression cassette, as described herein;
- (ii) 10 expressing the transgene of the first expression cassette in said stably transformed cell; and
- (iii) expressing the recombinase genetic unit of said genetic construct for a time and under conditions sufficient for a site-specific recombinase to be expressed and at least excise the first expression cassette of said genetic construct or a fragment thereof sufficient to disrupt expression of the transgene of said first expression cassette.

15

In a further alternative embodiment, wherein the transgene of the first expression cassette is a structural gene comprising a hormone-biosynthesis gene or hormone-encoding gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels as hereinbefore defined, the expression of which may induce a developmental transition in a cell
20 and/or organogenesis, the genetic construct of the invention may be used to produce a transformed organ. According to this embodiment, the transgene is expressed in a cell transformed with the subject genetic construct, for a time and under conditions sufficient to promote tissue differentiation or organogenesis, or at least the formation of a primordium. Subsequent to this "developmental transition", and preferably prior to extensive cell division,
25 the recombinase genetic unit of the genetic construct is activated or induced *via* induction or de-repression of the promoter operably connected to the recombinase gene therein, leading to expression of the site-specific recombinase encoded therefor and subsequent or concomitant recombinase-dependant excision of the transgene. The differentiated cells may be grown or cultured under appropriate conditions to produce a differentiated transformed organ or
30 organism.

- 26 -

Preferred hormone-encoding genes or hormone-biosynthesis genes according to this embodiment include plant growth regulatory substance-encoding genes such as, but not limited to, the *ipt* gene.

- 5 In particular applications of the invention to the production of transformed plants, the genetic construct comprising a plant growth regulatory substance-encoding gene, such as *ipt*, may be introduced to specific cells of a whole plant, by microinjection or *A.tumefaciens*-mediated transformation or biolistic methods, wherein expression of the plant growth regulatory substance-encoding gene induces organogenesis *in situ*, producing a chimeric plant.
- 10 Alternatively, the genetic construct may also be used to induce organogenesis from undifferentiated cells derived, for example, from a suspension cell culture or callus. Alternatively, the genetic construct according to this embodiment may also be used to induce organogenesis from tissue explant material, for example leaf discs, stem sections, root explants. Those skilled in the art will be aware of the technology requirements for introducing
- 15 the genetic construct into such plant cells.

As exemplified herein, the inventors have shown that temporary expression of the *ipt* gene *in situ*, in plant stem cells, may be used to produce adventitious transgenic shoots on an otherwise untransformed plant.

20

Similarly, the present invention also contemplates the use of auxin-biosynthesis genes to promote adventitious root formation or gibberellin-biosynthesis genes to promote formation of a floral meristem, amongst others.

- 25 This embodiment of the invention is of particular utility to the agriculture and forestry industries, where the regeneration of whole plants from isolated cells may not be efficient or cost-effective and, as a consequence, the production of transformed plants from isolated cells is not a viable or economic proposition. In such cases, the generation of adventitious transformed shoots, roots or other organs may be particularly advantageous, because *in vitro*
- 30 regeneration procedures will not be required.

- 27 -

Additionally, the transformed organs may be removed from the parent plant and cultured by micropropagation techniques known to those skilled in the art, to produce a whole transgenic organism.

- 5 As in all other embodiments of the invention described herein, the genetic construct may comprise additional genetic sequences which are desired to be permanently maintained in the transgenic organ or transgenic organism, following excision of the hormone-encoding or hormone-biosynthesis gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels. Preferably, these genes are linked to the first expression cassette
10 described herein, but placed outside the recombination loci, or alternatively, flanking said recombination loci such that they are not excised alongside the first expression cassette.

Excision of the first expression cassette contained in the genetic construct of the invention provides a means for the introduction of a second genetic construct comprising the same
15 structural gene or a homologue, analogue or derivative thereof. This is of particular utility where the structural gene encodes a selectable marker gene and it is either undesirable or impractical to produce a transgenic organism which expresses one or more selectable marker genes.

- 20 Accordingly, a further aspect of the present invention provides a method for multiply-transforming a cell using a single selectable marker gene, said method comprising the steps of:
- (i) transforming said cell with a genetic construct of the invention substantially as previously described, wherein the transgene of the first expression cassette of said genetic
25 construct is a selectable marker gene;
 - (ii) expressing the recombinase gene contained in said genetic construct in said cell or the progeny of said cell to effect excision of the first expression cassette thereof; and
 - (iii) transforming the cell obtained in step (ii) with a second genetic construct as hereinbefore described, wherein the transgene of the first expression cassette of said genetic
30 construct is a selectable marker gene which is substantially the same as the selectable marker

- 28 -

gene use in step (i) or a homologue, analogue or a derivative thereof.

Optionally, said method comprises the further step of repeating step (ii) above.

- 5 Besides marker gene removal and the promotion of organogenesis therein, the inducible excision system described herein has several potential uses.

Firstly, physical methods for plant transformation, including electroporation or CA^{2+} /PEG treatment of protoplasts, biolistic delivery of DNA into plant tissues, or *Agrobacterium*-
10 mediated plant transformation, often result in multiple tandem insertions, which leads in many cases to transgene instability (Matzke and Matzke, 1995). By placing *loxP* sites close to the T-DNA boundaries, and linking excision with reconstitution of a useful gene transcriptional unit, the excision system may be used to excise repeated DNA segments after integration into the plant genome. This would reduce any sequence duplication, thereby preventing transgene
15 instability which arises from DNA methylation, co-suppression/antisense mechanisms or recombination.

Secondly, the approach described herein can, with little modification, be adapted to achieve *in planta* cell-specific ablation. By expressing the *inlscre* gene from a promoter with tight
20 cellular and temporal patterns of expression, and by coupling excision with reconstitution of a cryptic lethal gene, ablation of particular cells or tissues can be achieved, enabling the study of cell lineages *in situ*.

Whilst not wishing to be bound by any theory or mode of action, when the genetic construct
25 of the present invention is inserted into the genome of a eukaryotic cell, in particular a plant cell, expression of any transgene therein may occur, either as constitutive or induced expression. Wherein the transgene of the first expression cassette is a structural gene, in particular a selectable marker gene, such expression facilitates the selection of transformed cells. Wherein the transgene of the first expression cassette is a structural gene, in particular
30 a reporter gene, expression thereof facilitates the detection of cells expressing said reporter

- 29 -

gene or other structural gene. The subsequent induced expression of the recombinase gene produces an active recombinase enzyme which is capable of recognising the two flanking recombination loci producing a genetic recombination event thereabouts, resulting in excision of the first expression cassette. As a consequence, the first expression cassette is deleted from
5 the genome of the transformed cell, which no longer expresses the transgene of the first expression cassette, for example a selectable marker gene or reporter gene.

Wherein the first expression cassette is inserted into, or embedded within a second expression cassette comprising a promoter, transgene and terminator to disrupt expression thereof,
10 excision of the first expression cassette restores expression of the second expression cassette, thereby facilitating detection of the excision event.

A further aspect of the present invention provides a cell transformed with a genetic construct of the invention substantially as previously described.

15

Preferably, the transformed cell is a eukaryotic cell such as a plant, animal or yeast cell. More preferably the cell is a plant cell. In a particularly preferred embodiment, the cell is derived from a plant species which is asexually or clonally propagated. Examples of plants which are particularly suited to the practice of the present invention include, but are not
20 limited to stolon-bearing or tuber-bearing plants such as potatoes, sweet potatoes, jerusalem artichoke, taro or yams, fibre or wood tree crops such as *Eucalyptus ssp.* or *Pinus ssp.*, aspen, ornamental plants such as gerberas, chrysanthemum, orchids, lilies, roses, fuschias, azaleas carnations, camellias or gardenias, citrus crops such as oranges, lemons, grapefruit, tangerines or limes, fruit tress such as apples or pears, berry fruits such as strawberry,
25 raspberry, loganberry or blackberry, tropical crops such as sugarcane, tobacco, bananas, plantain or pineapples or asparagus, amongst others, in particular plants where the removal of transgenes by sexual recombination means is difficult.

In a particularly preferred embodiment of the present invention, the transformed cell is a
30 tobacco cell.

- 30 -

However, the present invention is also useful for removing unwanted genes from *any* transformed plant species which is capable of being propagated vegetatively from cuttings, stolons, tubers or by grafting, layering etc., as well as by sexual hybridisation.

- 5 Means for introducing recombinant DNA into plant tissue include, but are not limited to, direct DNA uptake into protoplasts (Krens *et al.*, 1982; Paszkowski *et al.*, 1984), PEG-mediated uptake to protoplasts (Armstrong *et al.*, 1990) microparticle bombardment electroporation (Fromm *et al.*, 1985), microinjection of DNA (Crossway *et al.*, 1986), microparticle bombardment of tissue explants or cells (Christou *et al.*, 1988; Sanford, 1988),
10 vacuum-infiltration of plant tissue with nucleic acid, or T-DNA-mediated transfer from *Agrobacterium* to the plant tissue. Representative T-DNA vector systems are described in the following references: An *et al.* (1985); Herrera-Estrella *et al.* (1983a,b); Herrera-Estrella *et al.* (1985).
- 15 For microparticle bombardment of cells, a microparticle is propelled into a plant cell, in particular a plant cell not amenable to *Agrobacterium* mediated transformation, to produce a transformed cell. Wherein the cell is a plant cell, a whole plant may be regenerated from the transformed plant cell. Alternatively, other non-plant cells derived from multicellular species may be regenerated into whole organisms by means known to those skilled in the art. Any
20 suitable ballistic cell transformation methodology and apparatus can be used in practicing the present invention. Exemplary apparatus and procedures are disclosed by Stomp *et al.* (U.S. Patent No. 5,122,466) and Sanford and Wolf (U.S. Patent No. 4,945,050). When using ballistic transformation procedures, the genetic construct may incorporate a plasmid capable of replicating in the cell to be transformed.
- 25 Examples of microparticles suitable for use in such systems include 1 to 5 μm gold spheres. The DNA construct may be deposited on the microparticle by any suitable technique, such as by precipitation.
- 30 Plant species may also be transformed with the genetic construct of the present invention by

- 31 -

the DNA-mediated transformation of plant cell protoplasts and subsequent regeneration of the plant from the transformed protoplasts in accordance with procedures well known in the art.

Any plant tissue capable of subsequent clonal propagation, whether by organogenesis or
5 embryogenesis, may be transformed with a vector of the present invention. The particular tissue chosen will vary depending on the clonal propagation systems available for, and best suited to, the particular species being transformed. Exemplary tissue targets include leaf disks, pollen, embryos, cotyledons, hypocotyls, megagametophytes, callus tissue, existing meristematic tissue (e.g., apical meristem, axillary buds, and root meristems), and induced
10 meristem tissue (e.g., cotyledon meristem and hypocotyl meristem).

The term "organogenesis", as used herein, means a process by which shoots and roots, or other organs, are developed sequentially from meristematic centers.

15 The term "embryogenesis", as used herein, means a process by which shoots and roots develop together in a concerted fashion (not sequentially), whether from somatic cells or gametes.

Plants of the present invention may take a variety of forms. The plants may be chimeras of
20 transformed cells and non-transformed cells; the plants may be clonal transformants (e.g., all cells transformed to contain the expression cassette); the plants may comprise grafts of transformed and untransformed tissues (e.g., a transformed root stock grafted to an untransformed scion in citrus species). The transformed plants may be propagated by a variety of means, such as by clonal propagation or classical breeding techniques. For
25 example, a first generation (or T1) transformed plants may be selfed to give homozygous second generation (or T2) transformed plants, and the T2 plants further propagated through classical breeding techniques.

30 Following excision of the first expression cassette of the genetic construct defined herein, a

- 32 -

small "footprint" may be left in the genome of the transformed cell.

As used herein, the term "footprint" shall be taken to refer to any derivative of a genetic construct described herein which is produced by excision, deletion or other removal of the
5 first expression cassette from the genome of a cell transformed previously with said genetic construct.

A footprint generally comprises at least a single copy of the recombination loci used.
10 However, a footprint may comprise additional sequences derived from the genetic construct, for example nucleotide sequences derived from the recombinase gene unit, left border sequence, right border sequence, first expression cassette, second expression cassette, origin of replication, or other vector-derived nucleotide sequences. More likely, a footprint will comprise, in addition to the single copy of a recombination locus, nucleotide sequences
15 derived from the recombinase gene unit, transgene unit of the first expression cassette, or other first expression cassette sequences.

Accordingly, a footprint is identifiable according to the nucleotide sequence of the recombination locus of the genetic construct. In particular, the footprint will comprise a
20 sequence of nucleotides corresponding or complementary to a *lox* site.

A footprint thus comprises a sequence of at least about 30 nucleotides, preferably about 40 nucleotides, more preferably at least about 50 nucleotides and even more preferably at least about 100 nucleotides derived from the sequences outside (i.e. upstream and downstream) the
25 region of the second expression cassette.

Those skilled in the art will readily be capable of determining whether a cell comprises a footprint of a genetic construct of the invention as hereinbefore defined, using known techniques and without undue experimentation.

30

- 33 -

Accordingly, the present invention extends to a transformed cell or whole organism which comprises a footprint derived from a genetic construct as hereinbefore defined and to the progeny of said transformed cell or whole organism.

- 5 The present invention is further described with reference to the following non-limiting Figures and Examples.

In the Figures:

- 10 **Figure 1** is a schematic representation of the *cre/lox* site-specific recombination constructs; (A) Site-specific recombination test sequences in plasmid pBS210, and pBS210a, the predicted product of recombination. In pBS210, the *EcoRI-HindIII* fragment containing the Sc4 promoter (Sc4), a 35S promoter-*nptII*-35S3' transcriptional unit (*nptII*) flanked by *loxP* (*lox*) sites (arrowhead) in direct-repeat configuration, and a promoterless *gusA-nos3'* cassette, is shown. *cre/lox* site-specific recombination should remove the *loxP*-bound *nptII* transcriptional unit, producing pBS210a. Restriction enzyme designations: E, *EcoRI*; H, *HindIII*. (B) T-DNA regions of the binary vectors pBS215 and its derivative, pBS229. pBS215 contains the *EcoRI-HindIII* fragment from pBS210 between the T-DNA left (LB) and right border (RB) sequences. In pBS229, a *rbcS 1a* promoter-*inlscre-rbcS 1a3'* cassette (*inlscre*) was cloned into the *XhoI* (X) site of pBS215. Arrows in boxes indicate the direction of transcription.

Figure 2: is a photographic representation showing histochemical staining for GUS activity. 2 1/2- week old regenerating tobacco calli were stained for GUS activity using X-gluc. Blue coloration indicative of GUS activity is seen, usually localised but in some cases throughout the regenerating shoot.

Figure 3 is a photographic representation of a ³²P-labelled autoradiogram showing neomycin phosphotransferase (*NptII*) activity assays. Extracts of two leaves from each plant were assayed for *NptII* activity, and 15 µl of the reaction blotted onto Whatman P-81 paper. The

- 34 -

plant from which the extract was derived is shown (numbers) at the top left corner of each pair of spots. Shown are the *NptII* activity dot blots for five ntBS229 GUS⁺T₀ plants (# 4,7,8,17 and 20), and one GUS⁻ plant (#6) (Figure 3A), and for thirteen ntBS229-4 regenerants (Figure 3B). Included are the activities corresponding to positive (+) and
5 negative (-) controls.

Figure 4a is a schematic representation of the genomic copies of the pBS229 T-DNA construct carried by ntBS229 plants before (panel A) and after the predicted *cre/lox*-mediated site-specific recombination event (panel B). Indicated below each map are the primers
10 (triangles A-E) used for PCR analysis of DNA prepared from these plants. The expected PCR product obtained using each of the primer pairs indicated is represented as a line with the expected size (kb) of the PCR product shown below.

Figure 4b is a photographic representation showing the results of the PCR analysis for
15 ntBS229 T₀ and ntBS229-4 regenerated plants (lanes 1-6), with the primers used in each case indicated above the numbered lanes. Template DNA was isolated from either a chimeric Gus⁺*nptII*⁺ T₀ plant, ntBS229-4 (lanes 1,3,5) or from a typical GUS *nptII* ntBS229-4 regenerant (lanes 2,4,6). Lane S, *EcoRI*-digested SPP1 DNA and *HpaII*-digested pUC19 size markers.

20

Figure 5 is a schematic representation of the *cre/lox* site-specific recombination binary vector plasmids pBS266 and pBS267. Each plasmid contains the Sc4 promoter (Sc4), a *cre* and an Sc1 promoter-*nptII*- Sc3 terminator (Sc1-*nptII*) cassette both flanked by *loxP* (P) sites in direct repeat configuration, and a promoterless *gusA-nos3'* cassette. The *cre* cassette present
25 in pBS266 is pAp1-*inlscre-nos3'* (pAp1-*inlscre*), while in pBS267 it is pVic-*inlscre-nos3'* (pVic-*inlscre*). With both pBS266 and pBS267, *cre/lox* site-specific recombination should remove the *cre* and Sc1-*nptII* cassettes, producing a transcriptionally active Sc4 promoter-driven *gusA* transcriptional unit, as shown. Arrows in boxes indicate the direction of transcription, while the dotted lines represent the T-DNA left border (Lb) and right border
30 (Rb).

- 35 -

Figure 6 is a schematic representation of relevant parts of the *ipt* constructs and related plasmids. In pRDF9574, the *Hind*III fragment containing an enhanced 35S promoter (e35S), tobacco mosaic virus 5' untranslated region (TMV5'), *Nco*I and *Bam*HI restriction sites and *nos*3' termination region is shown. To make pRDF10072, the *Nco*I-*Bam*HI fragment from pRZ4 was inserted between the *Nco*I and *Bam*HI sites of pRDF9574. To make pRDF10086, the *Hind*III fragment from pRDF10072 containing the *ipt* gene was inserted into the *Hind*III site of the binary vector pIG121-Hm (Hiei *et al*, 1994), between the T-DNA left (LB) and right border (RB) sequences. Arrows in boxes indicate the direction of transcription. Restriction site designations: H, *Hind*III; N, *Nco*I; B, *Bam*HI.

10

Figure 7 is a schematic representation of relevant parts of plasmids used to construct pRDF10543. In pBS209, an *Eco*RI-*Hind*III fragment is shown containing the Sc4 promoter (Sc4), *loxP* (*lox*) sites (large arrowheads) in direct-repeat configuration, *Xba*I and *Xho*I restriction sites, and a *gusA-nos*3' cassette. Several changes were made to pBS209 as described in Example 2 to make pRDF10501, including introduction of an intron into the *gusA* coding region (intron_{gusA}). This *Hind*III fragment was inserted into pRDF10346, a binary vector containing *nptII* (*nos-npt-nos*3') and *oxy* (35S-*oxy-nos*3') genes between the T-DNA left (LB) and right border (RB) sequences, to make pRDF10543. Arrows in boxes indicate the direction of transcription. Restriction site designations: H, *Hind*III; E, *Eco*RI; Xba, *Xba*I; Xho, *Xho*I.

Figure 8 is a schematic representation of a genetic construct containing an excisable *ipt* gene. The 35S-*ipt-ipt*3' gene is inserted into the *Xba*I site of pRDF10543, and the product is used for insertion of the *ssu-inlscre-ssu*3' fragment from prbcS-inlscre. All other designations are as for Figure 7. Excision of the 35S-*ipt-ipt*3' and *SSU-inlscre-ssu*3' transgenes via *cre*-mediated recombination at *lox* sites leads to re-constitution of *gusA* gene expression under the control of the Sc4 promoter in transformed plant cells.

Figure 9 is a copy of a photographic representation of a ³²P-labelled autoradiogram showing neomycin phosphotransferase (Npt) activity assays. Extracts of leaves from 17 shoots

- 36 -

(numbers 1-17) that arose after inoculation of tobacco plants with *Agrobacterium* AGL1/pRDF10086 or from control, untransformed leaves (C) were assayed for Npt activity according to McDonnell *et al*, (1987). Shoot Nos. 4, 5, 9, 15, 16, and 17 were clearly positive for Npt activity.

5

Figure 10 is a photographic representation of a shoot (arrow) that arose on a tobacco plant after inoculation with *Agrobacterium* AGL1/pRDF10086. The shoot had a stem that was pale green to white in colour, with thickened leaves and stems, showed obvious loss of apical dominance, and was phenotypically Gus-positive and Npt-positive. The shoot was
10 approximately 10 cm long 9 weeks after inoculation.

Figure 11 is a photographic representation of a shoot, (arrow) approximately 2 cm long, that arose on a tobacco plant after inoculation with *Agrobacterium* AGL1/pRDF10086. The shoot was mostly creamy white in colour with distinct zones of normal green colour. The white
15 zones were Gus-positive, the green zones were Gus-negative.

Figure 12 is a photographic representation of a cluster of shoots (arrow) approximately 2 cm long, that arose on a tobacco plant after inoculation with *Agrobacterium* AGL1/pRDF10086. The shoots were normal green in colour and phenotypically Gus-negative and Npt-negative.
20

- 37 -

EXAMPLE 1**Enzymes and Chemicals.**

Restriction enzymes, DNA polymerase I large fragment (Klenow) and T₄DNA ligase were
5 purchased from New England Biolabs, and AmpliTaq DNA polymerase from Perkin Elmer.
Kanamycin sulfate was purchased from Sigma, and 5-bromo-4-chloro-3-indolyl- β -D-
glucuronic acid (X-gluc) was from Diagnostic Chemicals (Canada). Oligonucleotides were
synthesised on an Applied Biosystems, 394 DNA synthesiser.

10

EXAMPLE 2**Plasmid Constructions.**

Cloning and related techniques were performed essentially as described by Sambrook *et al*
(1989) with minor variations. Nucleotide sequences of plasmid constructs were verified by
15 DNA sequencing of plasmid DNA using the dideoxy chain-termination method (Sanger *et al*,
1977).

(i) Construction of pUC119-cre, pUC119-nlscre and pUC119-inlscre.

20 The *cre* open reading frame (orf) was amplified by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) from the
bacteriophage P1 genome using the 5' *cre* and 3' *cre* oligonucleotide primers (primers D and
E, respectively set forth in Example 4). Using these primer sequences, an *Nco*I site was
introduced at the initiating ATG of the *cre* orf, resulting in a Ser -> Ala change in the amino
acid sequence of the *cre* polypeptide, at amino acid position 2. The amplified DNA fragment
25 was digested with *Eco*RI and cloned into the *Eco*RI site of pUC119 (Vieira and Messing,
1987), creating pUC119-cre, for subsequent modification.

An SV40 T-antigen type nuclear localisation signal (nls), comprising the amino acid sequence
Met-Ala-Pro-Lys-Lys-Lys-Arg-Lys-Val-Thr (Kalderon *et al*, 1984), was introduced upstream
30 of the *cre* coding region in the plasmid pUC119-cre. A double stranded synthetic DNA

- 38 -

fragment encoding nls was produced by primer extension using Klenow enzyme and subsequently cloned into the *HindIII* and *NcoI* sites of the plasmid PUC119-cre, creating pUC119-nlscre. When translated, the *nlscre* orf produces an in-frame fusion polypeptide between nls and cre polypeptides.

5

The third intron of the *Parasponia andersonii* haemoglobin gene (Landsmann *et al.*, 1986) was isolated by PCR and inserted, using the *PstI* termini introduced by the PCR primers, into plasmid pUC119-nlscre, to disrupt the *nlscre* orf. First, a *PstI* site was introduced into the *nlscre* orf of pUC119-nlscre without altering the amino acid sequence encoded thereby, using
10 site-directed mutagenesis to substitute T for G at position 264 of the *nlscre* orf (²⁶²CTGCAG). The haemoglobin intron was then cloned as a *PstI* fragment into the *PstI* site of pUC119-nlscre, to produce the plasmid pUC119-inlscre.

(ii) Construction of p35S-cre, p35S-nlscre and p35S-inlscre.

15

The *cre*, *nlscre* and *inlscre* genes were cloned from their respective pUC119 plasmids into pJ35SN (Landsmann *et al.*, 1989), creating the plasmids p35S-cre, p35S-nlscre and p35S-inlscre, respectively. In these plasmids, expression of *cre* and its derivatives is under control of the cauliflower mosaic virus 35S (35S) promoter. Furthermore, the nopaline synthase gene
20 polyadenylation signal (*nos3'*) is located downstream of the *cre* orf in each plasmid.

(iii) Construction of prbcS-inlscre.

The *EcoRI* fragment of pUC119-inlscre comprising the *inlscre* orf was end-filled using
25 Klenow enzyme and placed upstream of a 0.45 kb *rbcS 1a* polyadenylation signal (*rbcS 1a* 3' end) and operably under the control of the 1.7 kb *A. thaliana rbcS 1a* promoter sequence (Donald and Cashmore, 1990) in pWM5 (Tabe *et al.*, 1995). The resulting construct was designated prbcS-inlscre.

30

- 39 -

(iv) Construction of pBS210

This plasmid, a derivative of the vector pGEM3zf+ (Promega), contained a cryptic *gusA* reporter gene upstream of the *nos3'* polyadenylation signal and placed operably under the control of the Sc4 promoter from the genome of subterranean clover stunt virus (SCSV) (Boevink *et al*, 1995). A schematic representation of pBS210 is provided in Figure. 1A.

The *gusA* reporter gene was inactive by the insertion of a DNA fragment containing a *loxP*-bound neomycin phosphotransferase gene (*nptII*) expressed from the 35S promoter and 35S polyadenylation signals (35S 3') (Tabe *et al*, 1995), between the Sc4 promoter and the *gusA* coding sequence. Site-specific recombination of pBS210 in which excision of the *lox*-bound 35S-*nptII*-35S cassette occurs, produces the plasmid pBS210a (Figure. 1A).

15 (v) Construction of pBS215 and pBS229.

The Sc4-*lox*-35S-*nptII*-35S-*lox*-*gusA*-*nos* cassette was cloned out from the plasmid pBS210 (Figure. 1A) as an *EcoRI*-*HindIII* fragment, from upstream of the Sc4 promoter (*EcoRI*) to downstream of the *nos3'* polyadenylation signal (*HindIII*), end-filled using Klenow enzyme and cloned into the end-filled *Bam*HI and *EcoRI* sites of the binary vector pTAB5 (Tabe *et al*, 1995). The new binary vector thus produced was designated pBS215 (Figure. 1B) in which the *loxP*-bound 35S-*nptII*-35S cassette provided the only selectable marker.

Plasmid pBS215 contains a unique *XhoI* site adjacent to the 35S 3' end of the *nptII* cassette within the region bounded by *loxP*. A blunt-ended *EcoRI* fragment, containing the *rbcS 1a* promoter placed upstream of the *inlscre* orf and *rbcS 1a* 3' end (i.e *rbcS 1a*-*inlscre*-*rbcS 1a*), was sub-cloned from the plasmid prbcS-*inlscre* into the end-filled *XhoI* site of pBS215, creating the plasmid pBS229 (Figure 1B).

vi) Construction of pRDF10072 and pRDF10086

The *ipt-ipt3'* cassette was cloned out from plasmid pRZ4, a derivative of pRZ3 (Ma *et al*, 1997) containing an *NcoI* site at the translation initiator ATG of *ipt*, as an *NcoI-BamHI* fragment (partial digestion with *BamHI*) and inserted between the *NcoI* and *BamHI* sites of pRDF9574 (de Feyter *et al*, 1997) to create pRDF10072 (Figure 6). pRDF9574 contains plant gene expression signals including an enhanced 35S promoter (Kay *et al*, 1987), the tobacco mosaic virus (TMV) 5' untranslated region corresponding to nucleotides 1-67 of TMV (Goelet *et al*, 1982) and the 3' terminator region of a nopaline synthase gene (*nos*). The *HindIII* fragment containing the *ipt* gene of pRDF10072 was inserted into the *HindIII* site of the binary vector pIG121-Hm (Hiei *et al*, 1994) to create pRDF10086 (Figure 6)

(vii) Construction of pRDF10302, pRDF10453 and pRDF10501

pBS209 is identical to pBS210 (Figure 1) except that it lacks the *nptII* gene. pBS209 (Figure 7) contains an Sc4 promoter and a *gusA* coding region flanking a pair of *lox* recombination sites. pBS209 also has unique *XhoI* and *XbaI* sites between the *lox* sites. The *EcoRI* site of pBS209 was converted to a *HindIII* site using an EcoHind adaptor (5' AATTAAGCTT 3'), creating pRDF10302. The Sc4-*lox-gusA-nos3'* cassette contained on pRDF10302 conferred Gus activity to *Agrobacterium* when introduced into the bacterium on a binary plasmid, so an intron was inserted into the *gus* coding region to prevent Gus expression in bacteria. This was achieved by replacing a *ClaI-SnaBI* fragment, containing a 5' portion of the *gus* coding region, from pRDF10302 with an *XbaI-SnaBI* fragment from pIG121-Hm (Hiei *et al*, 1994) containing the corresponding 5' portion of the *gus* gene with an intron inserted. The digested *ClaI* and *XbaI* ends were endfilled using Klenow enzyme prior to ligation. The resultant plasmid was designated pRDF10453. The S4-*lox-introngusA-nos3'* cassette of pRDF10453 directed expression of Gus activity in tobacco cells in transient assays, but did not confer Gus activity to *Agrobacterium* cells, indicating that insertion of the intron achieved its purpose. An *EcoRI* site was introduced into pRDF10453 at the position of the *XhoI* site using an *XhoEco* adaptor (5' TCGAGAATTC 3'), creating pRDF10501 (Figure 7).

(viii) Construction of pRDF10278 and pRDF10543

A polylinker containing *KpnI*, *SacI* and *EcoRI* sites was deleted from pRPA-BL-429, a plasmid containing a 35S-*oxy-nos3'* gene provided by Rhône-Poulenc, by digestion with *KpnI* 5 (partial) and *EcoRI* followed by blunting with T4 DNA polymerase and recircularisation with T4 DNA ligase, creating pRDF10278. A 2.2 kb *HindIII-KpnI* fragment of pRDF10278 containing the 35S promoter and *oxy* coding region, after blunting the digested *KpnI* end with T4 DNA polymerase, was inserted between the *HindIII* and *BamHI* (endfilled) sites of pIG121-Hm, creating pRDF10346 (Figure 7). The binary vector pRDF10346 contains a *nptII* 10 gene and an *oxy* gene (Stalker *et al*, 1988), driven by *nos* and 35S promoters, respectively. The *HindIII* fragment containing the *Sc4-lox-intronus-nos* cassette from pRDF10501 was inserted into the *HindIII* site of pRDF10346, creating pRDF10543 (Figure 7). This plasmid confers Gus expression and resistance to bromoxynil on plant cells.

15 (ix) Construction of a genetic construct containing an excisable *ipt* gene

The *HindIII* fragment containing the 35S-*ipt-ipt3'* gene from pRDF10072 is inserted into the *XbaI* site of pRDF10543 (Figure 7). This is done readily after half filling the restricted sites, treating the *HindIII* ends with Klenow, dATP and dGTP, and the *XbaI* ends with Klenow, 20 dCTP and dTTP, before ligation of the fragments. The resultant plasmid contains a unique *EcoRI* site which is used for insertion of an *EcoRI* fragment containing the *ssu-inlscre-ssu3'* cassette from prbcS-inlscre, creating a genetic construct that contains excisable *ipt* and *inlscre* genes. This construct is then introduced into *Agrobacterium* for subsequent inoculation into plants.

- 42 -

EXAMPLE 3

Protoplast Assays, Transgenic Plants and Phenotype Analysis.

Protoplasts of *Nicotiana plumbaginifolia* were prepared, electroporated with DNA and
5 assayed for β -glucuronidase (GUS) activity as described by Graham and Larkin (1995).

For *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation of plant material with the plasmid pBS229, pBS229 was transferred into *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* strain LBA4404 and leaf discs of *Nicotiana tabacum* cv. Wisconsin 38 were infected with LBA4404/pBS229 as described by
10 Ellis *et al* (1987), with the following modifications to the plant transformation procedure. Leaf pieces were co-cultivated with *A. tumefaciens* cells containing plasmid pBS229, and maintained in the dark for two weeks on MS medium (Murashige and Skoog, 1962) containing 100 μ g/ml kanamycin sulfate and 500 μ g/ml cefotaxime (Claforan, Hoechst). The leaf pieces were then transferred to the light, and kept on MS media without antibiotic
15 selection.

The GUS phenotype of transformed plant tissue was determined by histochemical staining with X-gluc (Jefferson *et al*, 1987). *NptII* assays were performed on transgenic leaf tissue extract according to (McDonnell *et al*, 1987).
20

EXAMPLE 4

Molecular Analysis of Plant DNA.

25 Plant DNA was prepared according to deFeyter (1996).

DNA was amplified in PCR reactions using 30 cycles of denaturation, annealing and extension at 94°C for 15 sec, 55°C for 30 sec, and 72°C for 1 min, respectively. Reaction products were resolved by electrophoresis in 1.5 % (w/v) agarose gels.

30

- 43 -

The sequences of the PCR primers used to analyse plant DNA were as follows:

Primer A: 5'-ATAAGAATGCGGCCGCACCCCGTGCCGGGATCAG-3';

Primer B: 5'-CATCAGAGCAGCCGATTGTCT-3';

Primer C: 5'-GGTTTCTACAGGACGTAACAT-3';

5 Primer D: 5'-GCGGAATTCGTCGACCATGGCCAATTTACTGACCG-3';

Primer E: 5'-GCGGAATTCAATCATTTACGCGTTAATGG.

EXAMPLE 5

10 Demonstration of *cre/lox*-mediated excision in transient expression assays

The strategy described herein is based upon an improvement to the inducible *cre/lox*-mediated *cis*-excision of transgenes, in particular selectable marker genes used in plant transformation.

15

The Examples described herein report the preparation of a DNA construct carrying the *cre* gene expressed from a regulatable plant promoter, and a selectable marker gene, *nptII*, which encodes neomycin phosphotransferase. The *cre* and *nptII* transcriptional units are located within the segment of DNA flanked by *loxP* sequences. In attempts to make a *cis*-acting
20 excision construct by ligation of the *cre* gene, or its derivative containing a nuclear localisation signal (*nlscre*), into a plasmid containing two *loxP* sites in direct repeat configuration, all recovered recombinant plasmids had deletions consistent with *cre/lox*-mediated excision (data not shown). To prevent premature excision in *E.coli*, the third intron of the *P. andersonii* haemoglobin gene was introduced into the *cre* coding region of the *nlscre*
25 orf. This modified orf, *inlscre*, was able to be cloned into *loxP*-containing plasmids, indicating that the presence of the intron significantly reduced expression of *nlscre* in bacteria.

The *inlscre* orf was then assayed in a recombination test system and its activity compared to that of the *cre* and *nlscre* genes, to determine whether *inlscre* potentially expressed wild-type
30 *cre* recombinase activity in eukaryotic cells. The recombination substrate in this assay,

- 44 -

plasmid pBS210, carries a *gusA* reporter gene construct rendered inactive by the insertion of the 35S-*nptII*-35S transcriptional unit between the promoter (Sc4) and the *gusA* gene (Figure 1A). The 35S-*nptII*-35S cassette is bound by two *loxP* sites in pBS210, in direct-repeat configuration. A successful *cre/lox*-mediated recombination event should excise the DNA
5 fragment between the two *loxP* sites, removing the *nptII* cassette and producing the expected recombination test product, pBS210a (Figure 1A), thereby activating the Sc4 promoter-derived expression of the *gusA* gene. The Sc4 promoter drives high level GUS expression in tobacco protoplasts and callus, and predominantly vascular expression in tobacco plants (Boevink *et al*, 1996).

10

The recombination mechanism shown in Figure 1A was tested initially in a transient expression assay using transfected tobacco protoplasts. Protoplasts were electroporated in the presence of plasmid pBS210 alone or co-electroporated with pBS210 plus p35S-*cre*, pBS210 plus p35S-*nlscre* or pBS210 plus p35S-*inlscre*. GUS activity was measured after 72 hours.

15 The results obtained (Table 1) indicate that plasmid PBS210 is unable to express GUS in eukaryotic cells, in the absence of *cre*. The inclusion of a plasmid capable of expressing *cre* or *nlscre* in electroporations activated GUS expression of pBS210. Whilst not wishing to be bound by any theory or mode of action, GUS expression was the result of *cre/lox*-mediated recombination of pBS210, producing the expected excision product pBS210a (Figure 1A).

20

Furthermore, the data shown in Table 1 indicate that the *inlscre* gene encoded as much as 37% of the recombinase activity of the *cre* or *nlscre* genes (Table 1), suggesting that splicing of the intron was occurring in transfected protoplasts. The transient expression data validated the *cre/lox*-mediated recombination mechanism involving pBS210, shown schematically in

25 Figure 1A.

A modified version of plasmid pBS210 was prepared for subsequent use in the *in planta* gene excision experiments described below, in Examples 6-8.

- 45 -

TABLE 1

cre/lox-mediated reconstitution of GUS expression from PBS210

5	ELECTROPORATED PLASMID	β -Glucuronidase, units/25 μ g protein
	pBS210	0
	pBS210 + p35s-cre	133
	pBS210 + p35S-nlscre	141
10	pBS210 + p35S-inlscre	51

Protoplast extracts were prepared and β -Glucuronidase activity was measured by the MUG method. Activities (relative fluorescence units) represent the average of two experiments.

15

EXAMPLE 6**Inducible *cre-lox* mediated *in planta* gene excision**

To demonstrate the principle of *in planta* inducible *cre/lox*-mediated gene excision in *cis*, a construct was prepared which contained a plant regulatable *inlscre* transcriptional unit adjacent to the *nptII* marker gene. As both genes are within the region of DNA bound by *loxP*, premature expression of *nlscre* in callus culture would lead to excision of the *nptII* gene before the selection of transgenic tissue was completed. To avoid this, the *inlscre* gene was expressed from the *rbcS 1a* promoter which had low activity in callus culture, and high activity in regenerating or regenerated tissues, organs or organisms. Sequences contained within the 1.7 kb *rbcS 1a* promoter fragment were previously shown to confer light-inducible expression on a heterologous gene in tobacco (Donald and Cashmore, 1990).

30

- 46 -

Preliminary experiments showed that no GUS activity could be detected when a construct containing the *gusA* gene driven by the *rbcS 1a* promoter and polyadenylation signals (*rbcS 1a* 3' end) was introduced into tobacco by *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation of leaf discs and subsequent regeneration in the dark for up to 3 weeks. In contrast, GUS expression
5 was apparent in a similar experiment conducted in parallel, wherein a 35S promoter-driven *gusA-nos3'* construct was introduced into plant cells (data not shown).

Furthermore, as *inlscre* had the least activity of the three *cre* genes tested in the protoplast experiments (Table 1), the inventors considered that use of this gene as source of *inlscre* would
10 provide an even tighter control of *inlscre* expression *in planta*.

The T-DNA region of the plasmid construct pBS229 (Figure 1B), was introduced into tobacco using *Agrobacterium*-mediated plant transformation procedures as described above. Since the activity of the *rbcS 1a* promoter is light-inducible (Donald and Cashmore, 1990), *inlscre*
15 expression was reduced until desired, by regenerating transgenic ntBS229 tissue initially in the dark, in the presence of kanamycin. This procedure avoided premature *nptII* excision. After two weeks, calli were transferred to media lacking kanamycin, and regeneration continued under normal light conditions.

20

EXAMPLE 7

Regeneration of plants free of the *nptII* gene

After three days in the light, small pieces of callus with developing shoots were removed and assayed for GUS expression by staining with X-gluc. A proportion of the tested shoots
25 stained blue (Figure 2), indicating expression of the GUS gene therein. These data suggest that excision of the DNA segment flanked by *loxP* had occurred in the transformed, regenerating shoots, thereby reconstituting the Sc4-GUS transcriptional unit (Figure 1A).

One month after continued regeneration in the light without kanamycin selection, leaves were
30 taken from eighteen ntBS229 plants and stained for GUS activity. Five plants showed GUS

- 47 -

activity in tissues for which Sc4 promoter-driven GUS expression is normal (not shown).

A young leaf and an old leaf were taken from each of the eighteen ntBS229 GUS⁺ plants and from one GUS⁻ plant and assayed for *nptII* activity. All Gus⁺ and Gus⁻ leaves tested had high
5 *nptII* activity levels, with the exception of one leaf from plant ntBS229-4 (Figure 3A).

DNA was also extracted from the leaf tissue for PCR analysis, to determine whether excision had occurred. The rationale of this approach is outlined in Figure 4a.

- 10 Using DNA obtained from ntBS229 plants prior to *cre/lox*-mediated recombination as template, PCR with primer combinations B+C and with D+E was calculated to produce amplification products of 0.72 kb and 1.1 kb in length, respectively (Figure 4a, panel A). In contrast, no amplification products should be synthesised in PCR reactions using ntBS229 DNA isolated from plant material in which *cre/lox*-mediated recombination has occurred.
15 This is because *cre/lox*-mediated excision of the *nptII* gene from genomic DNA prevents primer B from hybridising thereto (Figure 4a, panel B).

- Using DNA obtained from ntBS229 plants after *cre/lox*-mediated recombination has occurred as a template for PCR, the primer combination A+C was calculated to produce an
20 amplification product of 0.42 kb in length (Figure 4a, panel B). In contrast, the same primer pair was predicted to produce an amplification product of ~4.5 kb in length, using DNA from ntBS229 plants in which no recombination has occurred (Figure 4a, panel A).

- As shown in Figure 4b, amplification products of several ntBS229 T₀ leaf DNAs, of 0.72 kb,
25 1.1 kb and 0.42 kb in length, were obtained using the primer combinations B+C, D+E and A+C, respectively. These observations are consistent with the presence of both recombined and unrecombined pBS229 T-DNA constructs in the plant genomes.

- In contrast, the ntBS229-4 regenerant which had significantly lower *nptII* activity contained
30 only the excised construct, evident by the amplification of DNA of 0.42 kb in length only

- 48 -

when primers A+C were used and no products when primers B+C or D+E were used (Figure 4b).

Thus 9/10 leaves from five T₀ tobacco plants analysed were both GUS⁺, *nptII*⁺ and had a mixture of recombined and unrecombined pBS229 T-DNA constructs in their genomes. These plants were chimeric.

EXAMPLE 8

Excision of the *nptII* gene from the plant genome of T₀ regenerants

Plants were regenerated from leaf discs of one chimeric GUS⁺*nptII*⁺ T₀ tobacco plant, designated ntBS229-4. Thirteen plants, regenerated from six leaves, were assayed for both the GUS and *nptII* phenotype, and were subjected to PCR analysis of extracted DNA.

The regenerated plants were all GUS⁺ with expression evident in all tissues expected for Sc4 promoter-driven expression (data not shown).

PCR analysis of DNA extracted from these plants using primer combination A+C showed a product of 420 bp in all plants, while with primer combination B+C, a PCR product was seen only with DNA from plant #6, of 0.72 kb in length. The absence of any detectable amplification product obtained using primer pair B+C in 12/13 regenerants indicates that the level of cre/*lox*-mediated excision had increased in the ntBS229-4 regenerants compared to the parent ntBS229-4 plant. Furthermore, the cycle of tissue culture including regeneration employed was successful in reducing the frequency of chimeric plants produced.

NptII activity in 12/13 regenerated plants, was only slightly above background, however plant #6 had *nptII* activity levels characteristic of the chimeric parent ntBS229-4, from which it was derived (Figure 3B). The background *nptII* activity levels in the 12 regenerants is indicative of residual *nptII* enzyme levels produced in cells prior to the excision of the *nptII*

transcriptional unit from the genome.

To verify that *cre/lox*-mediated recombination had occurred in the regenerants, the 420 bp amplification product obtained from one of the regenerants using primers A+C was cloned and five independent clones subjected to DNA sequencing. The data (not shown) indicated that the expected *cre/lox*-mediated recombination event had indeed occurred.

Plants were similarly regenerated from three other *GUS*⁺*nptII*⁺ T₀ tobaccos, ntBS229-8, -17 and -20. In comparison to plant ntBS229-4, where 12/13 regenerants were *GUS*⁺*nptII*⁺, 4/18, 1/18 and 4/18 regenerants from ntBS229-8, -17 and -20 were *GUS*⁺*nptII*⁺, respectively.

In a second experiment involving *in planta cre/lox*-mediated gene excision, the T-DNA regions of plasmids pBS229 (Figure 1B), pBS266 and pBS267 (Figure 5) were separately introduced into tobacco. The procedure used was as described above in Example 6 and 7, except that in this experiment transgenic tissue was regenerated in the light. T₀ tobacco plants were generated for each construct, and seed collected from these plants. Seeds were germinated, and T₁ seedlings analysed for GUS phenotype, *nptII* enzymatic activity and PCR analysis of extracted leaf DNA as described above in Example 7 and 8. The results of this analysis are shown in Table 2. It was found that three out of nine ntBS229 T₁ tobacco lines were *GUS*⁺*nptII*⁺, while with the nine ntBS266 and ntBS267 T₁ lines analysed, all 5 *GUS*⁺ lines in each case were also *nptII*⁺.

TABLE 2
GUS phenotype and *nptII* genotype of T₁ tobacco plants

Source of T-DNA	T ₁ , <i>GUS</i> ⁺ <i>nptII</i> ⁺	T ₁ , <i>GUS</i> ⁺ <i>nptII</i> ⁺	T ₁ , <i>GUS</i> ⁺ <i>nptII</i> ⁺
pBS229	3/9 ^{a,b}	1/9	5/9
pBS266	0/9 ^c	5/9	4/9
pBS267	0/9	5/9	4/9

a: numbers in the table refer to the number of lines with the indicated phenotype and

- 50 -

genotype, expressed as a proportion of the total number of T₁ lines analysed in each instance; the word "line" is used here to indicate lineage with the corresponding T₀ plant.

- 5 b: For each T₁ line, a minimum of 30 plants was scored for GUS phenotype by staining with X-gluc. To determine the NptII phenotype, *nptII* enzymatic assays were performed on at least 20 GUS⁺ T₁ plants for each construct; for each T₁ line, DNA from 2-3 GUS⁺ plants was then extracted and subjected to PCR analysis, to establish the *nptII* genotype.
- 10 c: PCR analysis of extracted DNA was not performed with ntBS266 T₁ tobacco lines.

In a third *in planta* cre/lox-mediated gene excision experiment, the T-DNA region of pBS229 was introduced into *Solanum tuberosum* cultivar Atlantic (potato) by *Agrobacterium*-mediated plant transformation (Peter Waterhouse, unpublished). 34 T₀ plants were regenerated and
15 stained with X-gluc to determine the GUS phenotype. Two plants stained blue with X-gluc, indicating that cre/lox-mediated excision had occurred to produce a transcriptionally active *gusA* cassette (see Figure 1). Plants are regenerated from tissue explants of the GUS⁺ stBS229 plants, and the regenerants characterised for GUS phenotype, *nptII* enzymatic assay and PCR analysis of extracted DNA as described above in Example 7 and 8.

20

EXAMPLE 9

Transformation *in planta* using a hormone gene for selection of transformed tissue.

To demonstrate the principle of *in planta* selection of transformed tissue using a hormone
25 gene, a construct was prepared which contained an *ipt* coding region and *ipt* 3' polyadenylation sequence from the *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* pTiAch5 T-DNA (Heidekamp *et al*, 1983) inserted downstream of an enhanced 35S promoter and TMV 5' untranslated leader region (Goelet *et al*, 1982) to confer strong constitutive *in planta* expression of isopentenyl transferase. In order to conduct *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation of plant

- 51 -

cells, the 35S-TMV5'-*ipt-ipt3'-nos3'* gene from pRDF10072 was inserted into the binary vector pIG121-Hm (Hiei *et al*, 1994) to create pRDF10086 (Figure 6). pRDF10086 and pIG121-Hm were separately introduced into *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* strain AGL1 (Lazo *et al*, 1991). Cultures of AGL1/pRDF10086 and AGL1/pIG121-Hm were grown in the presence of 20 μ M acetosyringone to induce *vir* gene expression, the cells harvested by centrifugation and concentrated 25-fold by resuspension of the cells in a small volume of sterile water. The bacterial suspensions were inoculated into stems of 6-week old tobacco plants (*Nicotiana tabacum* cv. Samsun NN) using a 23G needle attached to a syringe to puncture the stems. Plants were kept in the greenhouse at 23°C daytime temperature for 3 days and then transferred to a 27°C daytime/ 18°C nighttime regime in the greenhouse. Galls appeared on plants 3 weeks after inoculation with AGL1/pRDF10086, after which time the plants were decapitated. No galls appeared on plants inoculated with AGL1/pIG121-Hm. Shoot primordia were visible on the surface of galls 5 weeks after inoculation and continued to develop and grow into shoots up to 10 cm long by 9 weeks after inoculation (Figure 10,11,12). Many of the shoots were white to pale green in colour, had thickened stems and leaves, and showed loss of apical dominance, all typical symptoms of overexpression of cytokinin hormones in plant tissues. Some white or pale green shoots gave rise to leaves or parts of leaves that were (normal) green in colour.

20

EXAMPLE 10

Analysis of tissues arising after *Agrobacterium*-mediated transfer of an *ipt* gene

The T-DNA of pRDF10086 contains not only the *ipt* gene but also a *nptII* gene and a *gusA* gene (Figure 6) driven by *nos* and 35S promoters, respectively, that can be used for detection of transformed plant tissue by virtue of expression of neomycin phosphotransferase (Npt) and β -Glucuronidase (Gus) enzyme activities. Some galls, shoots and leaves that arose on tobacco plants inoculated with AGL1/pRDF10086 were analysed for Npt enzyme activity (McDonnell *et al*, 1987) and Gus activity by histochemical staining (Jefferson *et al*, 1987). Slices of gall tissue contained some Gus-positive zones in predominantly Gus-negative areas (data not

- 52 -

shown). When shoots were analysed for Npt activity, 6/17 were Npt-positive (Figure 9). Three of the Npt⁺ shoots were also Gus-positive. When leaves that were part green and part albino were stained for Gus activity, the albino areas were strongly Gus-positive while the green areas were Gus-negative, indicating inactivation of the *gusA* gene in the green zones, and suggesting that selection was operating against high level Gus and/or Ipt expression in some transformed tissues.

EXAMPLE 11

Description of selection of transformed plant tissue using an excisable hormone gene

Transformed shoots that are overexpressing the *ipt* gene are often phenotypically abnormal (eg see above) and are difficult to root (Smigocki and Owens, 1988). To obtain relatively normal tissues and whole plants from the *ipt*-transformed shoots, it is necessary to either inactivate or remove the *ipt* gene. One way this could be achieved is to use *in planta* inducible cre/lox-mediated gene excision in *cis*, with the *ipt* gene lying within the region of DNA bound by two *lox* sites, along with the *inlscre* gene. The genetic construct would normally contain a gene or genes, within the T-DNA but not within the region excised upon cre activation, for introduction into plant cells.

An example of such a genetic construct, presently under construction, is represented schematically in Figure 8. A binary vector, pRDF10543, has been constructed as shown schematically in Figure 7. This binary vector contains *npt* and *oxy* genes in addition to the Sc4-*lox-lox-intronus-nos3'* cassette from pRDF10501. Two genes are inserted into pRDF10543, namely a 35S-*ipt-ipt3'* gene from pRDF10072 and an *ssu-inlscre-ssu3'* gene from prbcS-inlscre. Both are inserted between the *lox* recombination sites and are therefore be excised upon cre activation. The 35S-*ipt* gene functions in much the same way as demonstrated previously (Example 9) for the selection of transformed plant tissue. Sometime during or after formation of a shoot or other organised tissue resulting from *Agrobacterium*-mediated transfer of the genetic construct, expression of cre activity is induced, resulting in

- 53 -

excision of the genes between the *lox* sites. The excisable cassette of the genetic construct is flanked by an Sc4 promoter on one side and a promoterless *intron**gusA-nos3'* gene on the other side, such that *inlscre*-mediated excision of the excisable cassette results in juxtaposition of the Sc4 promoter to the *gus* gene, allowing expression of β -Glucuronidase enzyme.

- 5 Activation of the *gus* gene is therefore an indicator of *cre/lox*-mediated excision. The genetic construct also contains *nptII* and *oxy* genes, conferring neomycin phosphotransferase (Npt) activity and resistance to the herbicide bromoxynil, respectively.

This genetic construct is introduced into *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*, and the resultant cells
10 used to inoculate stems of tobacco plants as described earlier for AGL1/pRDF10086. Shoots and leaves that form from galls that grow at the inoculated sites are analysed for β -Glucuronidase and Npt enzyme activity and for survival after application of the herbicide bromoxynil (Rhône-Poulenc). Presence of either enzyme activity or resistance to bromoxynil indicates transformation of the plant tissues analysed. The presence of β -Glucuronidase
15 enzyme activity indicates that excision of the excisable cassette has occurred in the transformed plant tissue. Excision of the *ipt* gene from such tissues results in a relatively normal phenotype of leaves and stems, namely greener leaves and stems with less thickening associated with overexpression of cytokinin hormones, compared to tissues retaining the *ipt* gene. Relatively normal looking, Gus-positive shoots are chosen for molecular analysis to
20 demonstrate the presence of a reconstituted Sc4-*gusA-nos3'* gene and to test for the presence and activity of the *nptII* and *oxy* genes. Shoots which show the presence of a reconstituted *gus* gene are allowed to flower and set seed, and progeny plants are analysed for segregation and activity of the *nptII*, *gus* and *oxy* genes. A Mendelian pattern of inheritance of one or more of these genes demonstrates that the chosen shoots were stably transformed by the
25 genetic construct with subsequent excision of the *ipt* and *inlscre* genes.

- 54 -

MICROORGANISM DEPOSITS

The genetic constructs exemplified herein and designated pUC119-cre, pUC119-nlscre, pUC119-inlscre, p35S-cre, p35S-nlscre, p35S-inlscre, prbcS-inlscre, pBS210, pBS215, 5 pBS229, pRDF10072, pRDF10086, pRDF10302, pRDF10453, pRDF10501, pRDF10278 and pRDF10543, have been deposited on 27 March, 1997 with the Australian Government Analytical Laboratories (AGAL), 1 Suakin Street, Pymble, New South Wales 2073, Australia, in accordance with and under the provisions of the Budapest Treaty on the International Recognition of the Deposit of Microorganisms for the Purposes of Patent 10 Procedure, and assigned Accession Nos. _____, _____, _____, _____, _____, _____, _____, _____, _____, _____, _____, and _____, respectively.

15 EQUIVALENTS

Those skilled in the art will appreciate that the invention described herein is susceptible to variations and modifications other than those specifically described. It is to be understood that the invention includes all such variations and modifications. The invention also includes all 20 of the steps, features, compositions and compounds referred to in this specification, individually or collectively, and any and all combinations or any two or more of said steps or features.

REFERENCES

1. Abremski *et al* (1983) *Cell* 32, 1301-1311
- 5 2. An *et al.* (1985) *EMBO J.* 4:277-284.
3. Armstrong, C.L., Peterson, W.L., Buchholz, W.G., Bowen, B.A. Sulc, S.L. (1990). *Plant Cell Reports* 9, 335-339.
4. Boevink, P. *et al* (1995) *Virology* 207, 354-361
5. Christou, P., McCabe, D.E., Swain, W.F. (1988). *Plant Physiol* 87, 671-674.
- 10 6. Crossway *et al.* (1986) *Mol. Gen. Genet.* 202, 179-185.
7. Dale, E.C., & Ow, D.W. (1991) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 88, 10558-10562
8. de Feyter, R. *et al* (1997) Manuscript in preparation
9. Donald, R.G.K. & Cashmore, A.R. (1990) *EMBO J.* 9, 1717-1726
10. Ellis, J.G. *et al* (1987) *EMBO J.* 6, 11-16
- 15 11. Fromm *et al.* (1985) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. (USA)* 82, 5824-5828.
12. Goelet, P. *et al* (1982) *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 79, 5818-5822
13. Golic, K.G. *et al* (1989) *Cell* 59, 499-509
14. Graham, M.W. & Larkin, P.J. (1995) *Transgenic Research* 4, 324-331
15. Haseloff, J. and Gerlach, W.L. (1988). *Nature* 334, 586-594.
- 20 16. Heidekamp, F. *et al* (1983) *Nucl Acids Res.* 11, 6211-6223
17. Herrera-Estrella *et al.* (1983a) *Nature* 303, 209-213.
18. Herrera-Estrella *et al.* (1983b) *EMBO J.* 2, 987-995.
19. Herrera-Estrella *et al.* (1985) *In: Plant Genetic Engineering*, Cambridge University Press, NY, pp 63-93.
- 25 20. Hiei, Y. *et al* (1994) *Plant J.* 6, 271-282
21. Jefferson, R.A. *et al* (1987) *EMBO J.* 6, 3901-3907
22. Kalderon, D. *et al* (1984) *Cell* 39, 499-509
23. Kay, R. *et al* (1987) *Science* 236, 1299-1302
24. Krens, F.A., Molendijk, L., Wullems, G.J. and Schilperoort, R.A. (1982).
- 30 *Nature* 296, 72-74.

25. Landsmann, J. *et al* (1986) *Nature* 324, 166-168
26. Landsmann, J. *et al* (1989) *Mol. Gen. Genet.* 214, 68-73
27. Lazo, G.R. *et al* (1991) *Bio/Technology* 9, 963-967
28. Lloyd, A.M. & Davis, R.W. (1994) *Mol. Gen. Genet.* 242, 653-657
- 5 29. Lyznik, L.A. *et al* (1995) *The Plant Journal* 8, 177-186
30. Ma, Q-H *et al* (1997) Specific expression of isopentenyl transferase gene in transgenic tobacco seed controlled by a pea vicilin promoter *Aust. J. Plant Physiol* (submitted for publication)
31. Matzke, M.A. & Matzke A.J.M. (1995) *Plant Physiol.* 107, 679-68
- 10 32. McDonnell, R.E. *et al* (1987) *Plant Mol. Biol. Rep.* 5, 380-386
33. Murashige, T. & Skoog, F. (1962) *Physiol. Plant.* 15, 473-497
34. O'Gorman, S. *et al* (1991) *Science* 251, 1351-1355
35. Pazkowski *et al.* (1984) *EMBO J.* 3, 2717-2722.
36. Russell, S.H. *et al* (1992) *Mol. Gen. Genet.* 234, 49-59
- 15 37. Sanger, F. *et al* (1977) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 74, 5463-5467
38. Sambrook, J. *et al* (1989) *In: Molecular Cloning - A laboratory manual* (second edition), Cold Spring Harbor Lab. press
39. Smigocki, A.C. and Owens, L.D. (1988) *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 85, 5131-5135
40. Stalker, D.M. *et al* (1988) *J. Biol Chem.* 263, 6310-6314
- 20 41. Tabe, L.M. *et al* (1995) *J. Anim. Sci.* 73, 2752-2759
42. Vieira, J. & Messing, J. (1987) *Methods Enzymol.* 153, 3-11

- 57 -

CLAIMS:

1. A genetic construct comprising a first expression cassette which comprises:
 - (i) a recombinase genetic unit which comprises a genetic sequence which encodes
5 a site-specific recombinase placed upstream of a terminator sequence and operably under the control of a first promoter; and
 - (ii) a transgene unit which comprises one or more expressable transgenes as hereinbefore defined, placed operably under the control of one or more second promoter sequences;
- 10 wherein said recombinase genetic unit and said transgene unit are linked and wherein said first expression cassette is flanked by two recombination loci capable of binding to said site-specific recombinase.
2. The genetic construct according to claim 1 wherein the genetic sequence which
15 encodes the site-specific recombinase is the *cre* gene and the recombination loci are *lox* sites or functionally-equivalent homologues, analogues or derivatives thereof.
3. The genetic construct according to claim 1 wherein the genetic sequence which encodes the site-specific recombinase is the *flp* gene and the recombination loci are *frt* sites
20 or functionally-equivalent homologues, analogues or derivatives thereof.
4. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 3 wherein the transgene encodes a ribozyme molecule.
- 25 5. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 3 wherein the transgene encodes an antisense molecule.
6. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 3 wherein the transgene encodes a co-suppression molecule.

30

- 58 -

7. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 3 wherein the transgene is a structural gene.

8. The genetic construct according to claim 7 wherein the structural gene sequence is
5 a selectable marker gene, a reporter gene, a hormone gene, hormone-encoding gene, hormone-biosynthesis gene or a genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels.

9. The genetic construct according to claim 8 wherein the selectable marker gene is
10 selected from the list comprising the antibiotic resistance genes which confer resistance to ampicillin, Claforan, gentamycin, G-418, hygromycin, kanamycin, neomycin, spectinomycin, tetracycline or a derivative or related compound thereto.

10. The genetic construct according to claim 8 wherein the selectable marker gene is
15 selected from the list of herbicide-resistance genes which encode polypeptides which confer resistance to any one or more of atrazine, Basta, Bialophos, bromoxynil, Buctril, 2,4-D, glyphosate, phosphinothricin, sulphonylurea, or a derivative or related compound thereto.

11. The genetic construct according to claim 8 wherein the reporter gene is selected from
20 the list comprising chloramphenicol acetyltransferase, β -glucuronidase, luciferase, and green fluorescent protein genes.

12. The genetic construct according to claim 8 wherein the structural gene encodes a polypeptide or enzyme which catalyses at least one step leading to the synthesis of a cytokinin
25 or auxin or other plant growth regulator, or regulates the production or metabolism of said cytokinin, auxin or other plant growth regulator.

13. The genetic construct according to claim 12 wherein the structural gene is *ipt*.

30 14. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 13, wherein the genetic

- 59 -

construct further comprises a modification to reduce or prevent recombinase expression in a prokaryote cell.

15. The genetic construct according to claim 14 wherein the modification is the insertion
5 of an intron sequence to disrupt expression of the recombinase genetic unit absent removal of said intron sequence.

16. The genetic construct according to claim 14 wherein the modification is the insertion of an intron sequence in the coding region of the recombinase gene.

10

17. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 16 wherein the first and second promoters are capable of conferring expression of the structural gene and site-specific recombinase gene in a eukaryote cell.

15 18. The genetic construct according to claim 17 wherein the eukaryote is a plant.

19. The genetic construct according to claim 18 wherein the plant is selected from the list comprising stolon-bearing or tuber-bearing plants such as potatoes, sweet potatoes, jerusalem artichoke, taro or yams, fibre or wood tree crops such as *Eucalyptus ssp.* or *Pinus ssp.*,
20 aspen, ornamental plants such as gerberas, chrysanthemum, orchids, lilies, roses, fuschias, azaleas carnations, camellias or gardenias, citrus crops such as oranges, lemons, grapefruit, tangerines or limes, fruit trees such as apples or pears, berry fruits such as strawberry, raspberry, loganberry or blackberry, tropical crops such as sugarcane, tobacco, bananas, plantain or pineapples or asparagus.

25

20. The genetic construct according to claim 18 wherein the plant is a solanaceous plant.

21. The genetic construct according to claim 20 wherein the plant is tobacco or potato.

30 22. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 17 wherein the first and/or

- 60 -

second promoter is selected from the list comprising constitutive promoters, seed-specific promoters, floral-specific promoters, anther-specific promoters, tapetum-specific promoters, root-specific promoters, leaf-specific promoters, stem-specific promoters, meristem-specific promoters, light-inducible promoters, metal-inducible promoters, heat-shock promoters,
5 wound-inducible and stress-inducible promoters.

23. The genetic construct according to claim 22 wherein the first and/or second promoters are selected from the list comprising CaMV 35S, *NOS*, *OCS*, Sc1, Sc4 and *rbcS*, amongst others.

10

24. The genetic construct according to claims 22 or 23 wherein the first promoter is an inducible promoter.

15

25. The genetic construct according to claim 24 wherein the inducible promoter is the *rbcS* promoter.

26. The genetic construct according to claim 25 wherein the first promoter is the *Arabidopsis thaliana rbcS 1a* promoter.

20

27. The genetic construct according to claim 23 wherein the first promoter is the CaMV 35S promoter.

28. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 23 to 27 wherein the second promoter is the Sc4 promoter.

25

29. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 28 wherein the first promoter switches on expression of the site-specific recombinase following the commencement of expression of the structural gene sequence.

30

30. The genetic construct according to claim 29 wherein the first promoter is the

- 61 -

Arabidopsis thaliana rbcS 1a promoter and the second promoter is the CaMV 35S promoter or the Sc4 promoter.

31. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 30 wherein the recombinase
5 genetic unit further comprises a nucleotide sequence which encodes a nuclear localisation signal fused in-frame to the coding region of the recombinase gene.

32. The genetic construct according to claim 31 wherein the nuclear localisation signal is
10 the SV40 T-antigen type nuclear localisation signal.

33. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 32 wherein the first
expression cassette flanked by recombination loci is inserted into a second expression cassette
such that excision of the first expression cassette from the second expression cassette alters
expression of the second expression cassette.

15 34. The genetic construct according to claim 33 wherein the second expression cassette
comprises one or more expressable transgenes selected from the list comprising structural
genes, ribozymes, antisense molecules or co-suppression molecules and wherein each of said
transgenes is placed operably under the control of a promoter sequence.

20 35. The genetic construct according to claim 34 wherein the transgene of the second
expression cassette is a structural gene.

36. The genetic construct according to claim 35 wherein the structural gene is a reporter
25 gene.

37. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 33 to 36 wherein the transgene
of the second expression cassette is expressed following excision of the first expression
cassette.

30

- 62 -

38. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 32 further comprising an expressable transgene operably connected to a promoter sequence wherein said expressable transgene is juxtaposed to the outside of the region flanked by the recombination loci and separated from the adjacent recombination loci by a spacer region of at least 2 nucleotides in
5 length.

39. The genetic construct according to claim 38 wherein the expressible gene encodes a functional enzyme, polypeptide, ribozyme, antisense, co-suppression molecule or other RNA molecule.

10

40. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 39 further comprising one or more left border and/or right border sequences or other T-DNA sequences to facilitate its *in vivo* insertion into plant chromosomal DNA.

15 41. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 40 when used to transform a cell.

42. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 40 when used to delete, excise or otherwise remove a transgene from a transformed cell.

20

43. A method of removing a transgene from a cell transformed with the genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 40, said method comprising expressing the recombinase genetic unit of said genetic construct for a time and under conditions sufficient for a site-specific recombinase to be expressed and at least excise the first expression cassette of said
25 genetic construct.

44. A method of transiently expressing a transgene in a stably transformed cell, said method comprising:

(i) stably transforming said cell with the genetic construct according to any one
30 of claims 1 to 40;

- 63 -

- (ii) expressing the transgene of the transgene unit in said stably transformed cell; and
- (iii) expressing the recombinase genetic unit of said genetic construct for a time and under conditions sufficient for a site-specific recombinase to be expressed and at least
5 excise the first expression cassette of said genetic construct.

45. The method according to claims 43 or 44 wherein the transgene is selected from the list comprising structural genes, ribozymes, antisense molecule and co-suppression molecules.

10 46. The method according to claim 45 wherein the expressible transgene is a structural gene selected from the list comprising selectable marker gene, reporter gene, hormone gene, hormone-encoding gene, hormone biosynthesis gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels.

15 47. A method of inducing, suppressing or otherwise altering the expression of a transgene in a cell transformed with the genetic construct according to claim 33, said method comprising expressing the recombinase genetic unit of said genetic construct for a time and under conditions sufficient for a site-specific recombinase to be expressed and at least excise the first expression cassette of said genetic construct.

20

48. A method of producing a transformed cell comprising the steps of:

- (i) transforming a cell with the genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 40; and
- (ii) expressing the recombinase genetic unit for a time and under conditions
25 sufficient for expression of the site-specific recombinase encoded by said recombinase genetic unit to occur and result in excision of the transgene of the first expression cassette of said genetic construct or a fragment thereof sufficient to disrupt expression of said transgene.

30 49. The method according to claim 48 wherein the transgene of the first expression

- 64 -

cassette comprises a selectable marker gene and the step of expressing the recombinase genetic unit results in excision of said selectable marker gene or a fragment thereof sufficient to prevent its expression.

- 5 50. The method according to claim 49 wherein the selectable marker gene is selected from the list comprising the antibiotic resistance genes which confer resistance to ampicillin, Claforan, gentamycin, G-418, hygromycin, kanamycin, neomycin, spectinomycin, tetracycline or a derivative or related compound thereto.
- 10 51. The method according to claim 40 wherein the selectable marker gene is selected from the list of herbicide-resistance genes which encode polypeptides which confer resistance to any one or more of atrazine, Basta, Bialophos, bromoxynil, Butril, 2,4-D, glyphosate, phosphinothricin, sulphonylurea, or a derivative or related compound thereto.
- 15 52. A method of producing a transformed plant cell, said method comprising the steps of:
- (i) transforming said cell with the genetic construct according to any one of claims 12 to 40, wherein the structural gene of the first expression cassette is a hormone gene, hormone-encoding gene, hormone-biosynthesis gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels;
 - 20 (ii) expressing said structural gene in said transformed cell for a time and under conditions sufficient for said cell to differentiate into the progenitor cells of said organ;
 - (iii) expressing the recombinase genetic unit of the genetic construct for a time and under conditions sufficient for expression of the site-specific recombinase encoded by
 - 25 said recombinase genetic unit to occur, thereby leading to excision of the structural gene of the first expression cassette or a fragment thereof sufficient to disrupt expression of the structural gene.
53. The method according to claim 52 comprising the additional step of growing the
- 30 differentiated progenitor cell into an organ or whole plant.

- 65 -

54. The method according to claim 52 or 53 wherein the cell which is transformed in step (i) is derived from a plant cell line, suspension culture of a plant cell line, tissue culture of a plant cell, or callus.
- 5 55. The method according to claim 52 or 53 wherein the cell which is transformed in step (i) is derived from a tissue explant selected from the list comprising leaf, stem, root, or seed, amongst others.
56. The method according to claim 52 or 53 wherein the transformation step (i) is carried
10 out *in situ* on a whole plant.
57. The method according to any one of claims 52 to 56 wherein the hormone gene, hormone-encoding gene, hormone-biosynthesis gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels produces a cytokinin or regulates the
15 production or metabolism of a cytokinin when expressed in the plant cell, sufficient to result in adventitious shoot formation.
58. The method according to claim 57 wherein the hormone gene, hormone-encoding gene, hormone-biosynthesis gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable
20 of regulating hormone levels is *ipt* or a homologue, analogue or derivative thereof.
59. The method according to any one of claims 52 to 56 wherein the hormone gene, hormone-encoding gene, hormone-biosynthesis gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels produces an auxin or regulates the
25 production or metabolism of an auxin when expressed in the plant cell, sufficient to result in adventitious root formation.
60. The method according to any one of claims 52 to 56 wherein the hormone gene, hormone-encoding gene, hormone-biosynthesis gene or genetic sequence which encodes a
30 polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels produces a gibberellin or regulates the

- 66 -

production or metabolism of an gibberellin when expressed in the plant cell, sufficient to result in organogenesis.

61. A method of introducing multiple genes into a cell using a single selectable marker
5 gene, said method comprising the steps of:

- (i) transforming said cell with a genetic construct, according to any one of claims 33 to 40 wherein transgene of the first expression cassette is a selectable marke gene;
- (ii) expressing the recombinase gene contained in said genetic construct in said cell or the progeny of said cell; and

10 (iii) transforming the cell obtained in step (ii) with a second genetic construct as hereinbefore described, wherein the structural gene of said genetic construct is a selectable marker gene which is substantially the same as the selectable marker gene use in step (i) or a homologue, analogue or a derivative thereof.

15 62. The method according to claim 61 comprising the further step of repeating step (ii) of said method.

63. The method according to claim 62 further comprising repeating the steps defined by claim 61 at least once.

20

64. A cell or organism transformed with the genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 40 or a derivative thereof produced by the removal of the first expression cassette of said genetic construct therefrom.

25 65. The cell or organism according to claim 64 further characterised as a prokaryotic cell.

66. The cell or organism according to claim 64 further characterised as a eukaryotic cell or organism.

30 67. The cell or organism according to claim 64 wherein the eukaryote cell is a plant cell

- 67 -

or organism.

68. A cell or organism which comprises a footprint of at least about 30 nucleotides in length derived from the genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 40, wherein said
5 footprint at least comprises one the the recombination loci of said genetic construct.

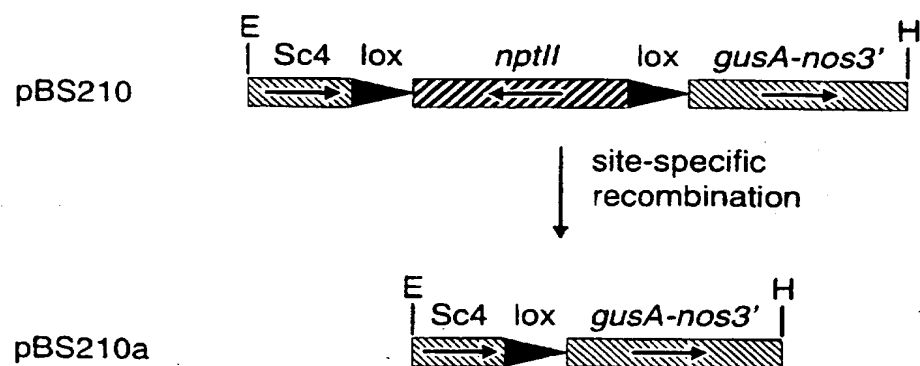
69. The cell or organism according to claim 68 wherein the plant is selected from the list comprising stolon-bearing or tuber-bearing plants such as potatoes, sweet potatoes, jerusalem artichoke, taro or yams, fibre or wood tree crops such as *Eucalyptus ssp.* or *Pinus ssp.*,
10 aspen, ornamental plants such as gerberas, chrysanthemum, orchids, lilies, roses, fuschias, azaleas carnations, camellias or gardenias, citrus crops such as oranges, lemons, grapefruit, tangerines or limes, fruit tress such as apples or pears, berry fruits such as strawberry, raspberry, loganberry or blackberry, tropical crops such as sugarcane, tobacco, bananas, plantain or pineapples or asparagus, amongst others.

15

70. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 40 when used to ablate a cell or tissue *in planta*.

1/15

A



B

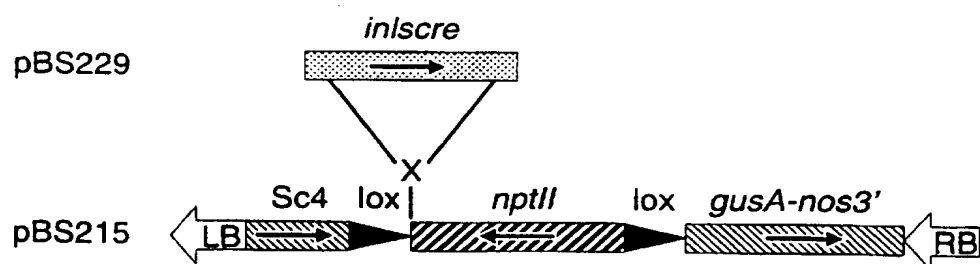


FIGURE 1

2/15



FIGURE 2

3/15

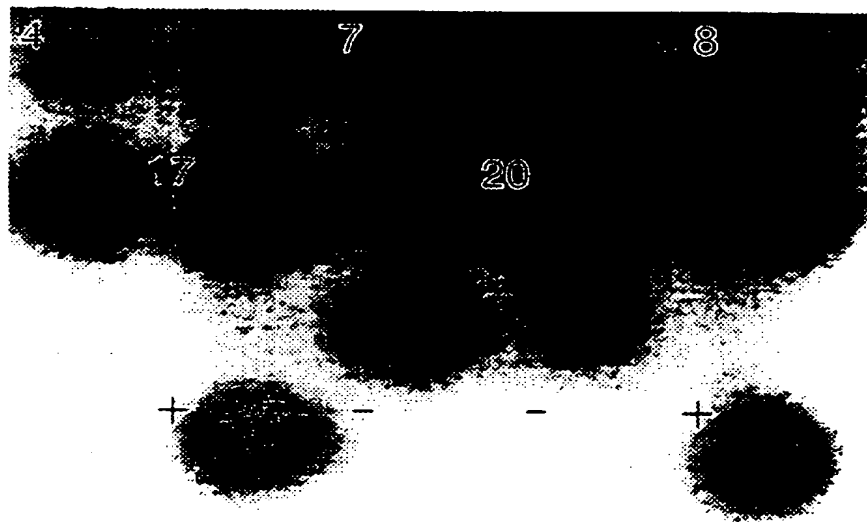


FIGURE 3A

4/15

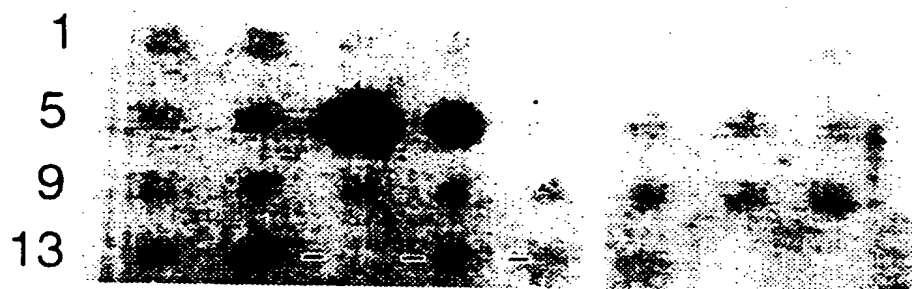


FIGURE 3B

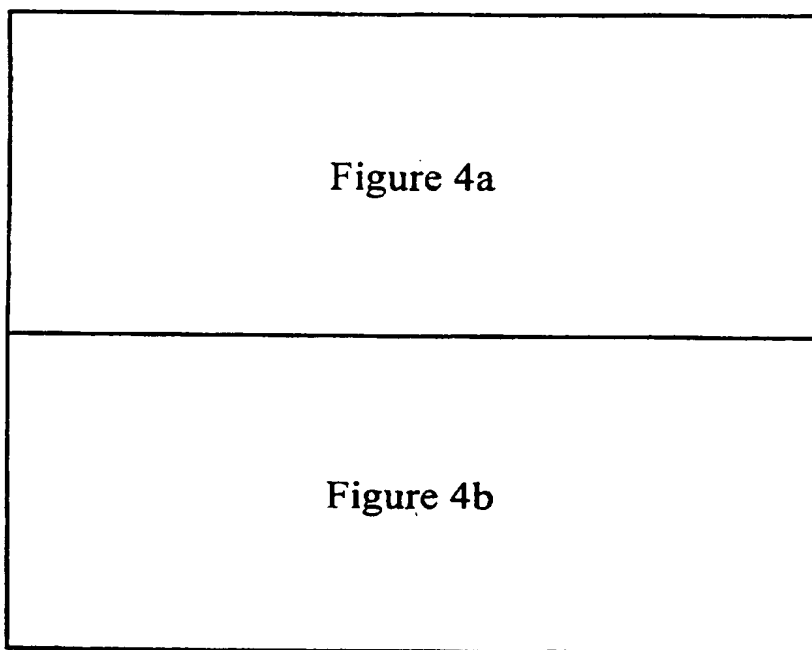


FIGURE 4

6/15

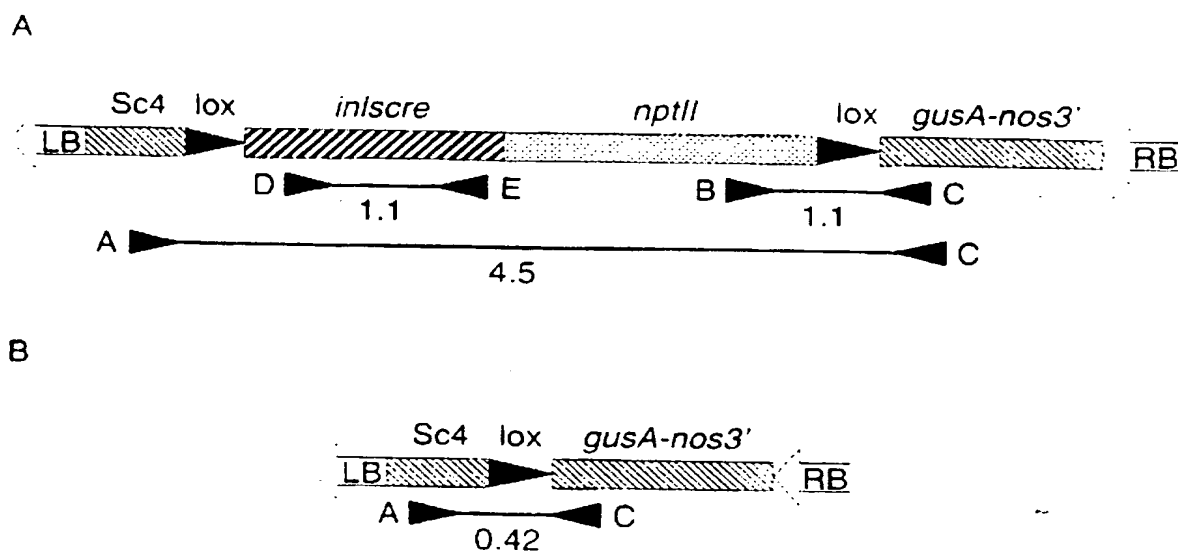


FIGURE 4a

7/15

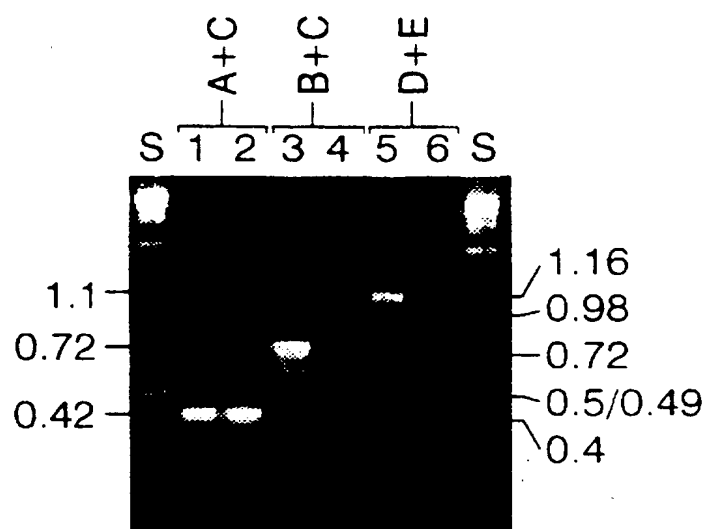


FIGURE 4b

(pBS266) pAp1-in/scre
(pBS267) pVic-in/scre

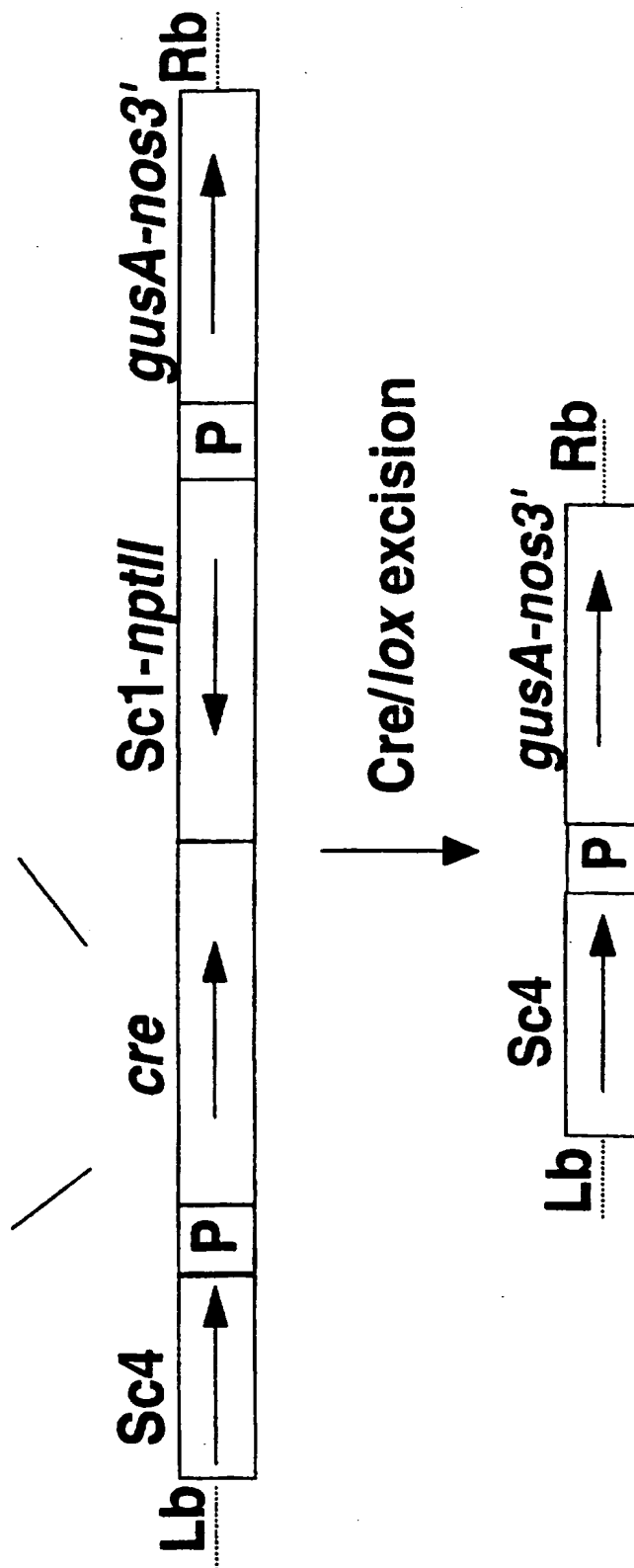


FIGURE 5

9/15

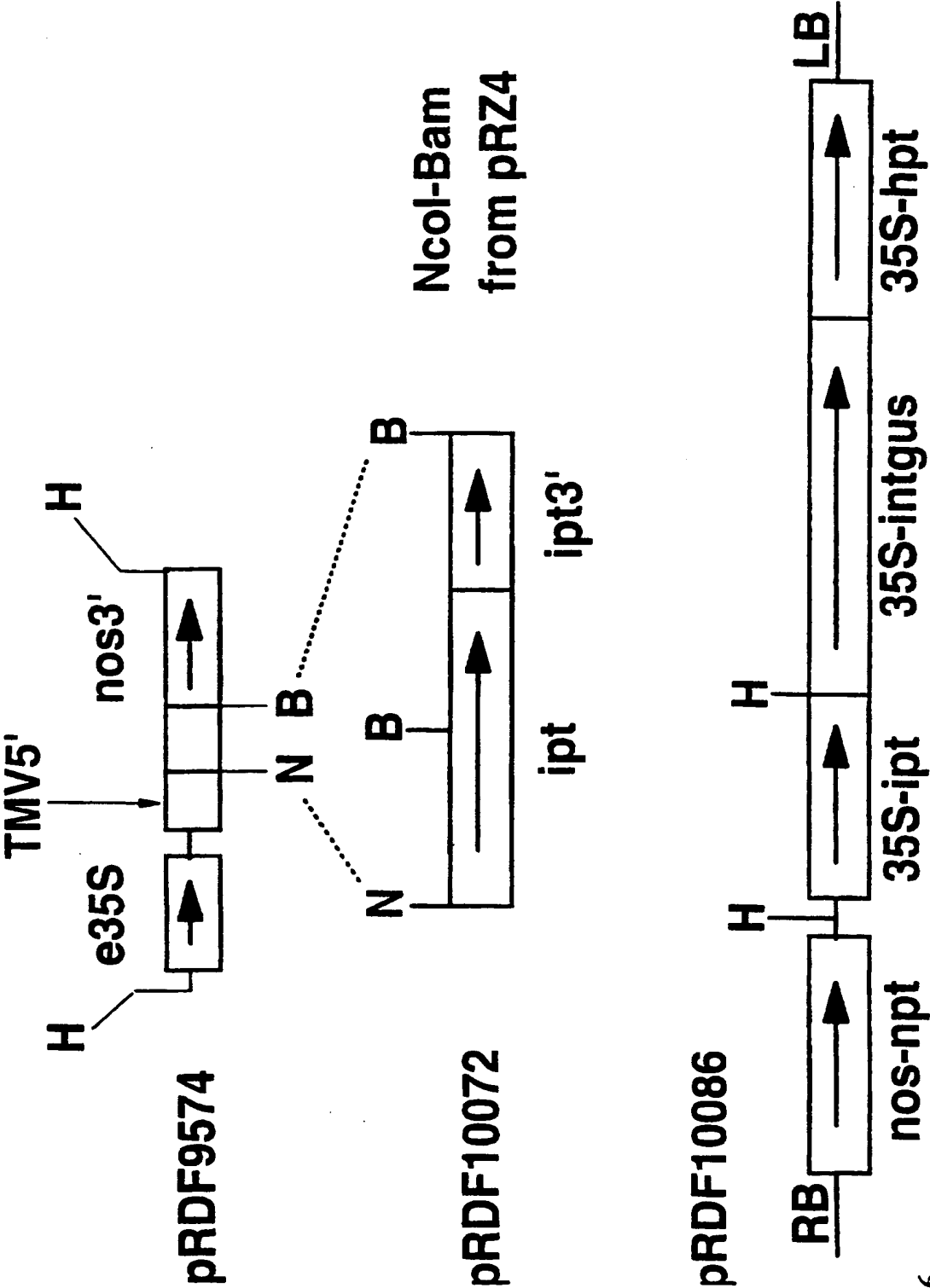


FIGURE 6

10/15

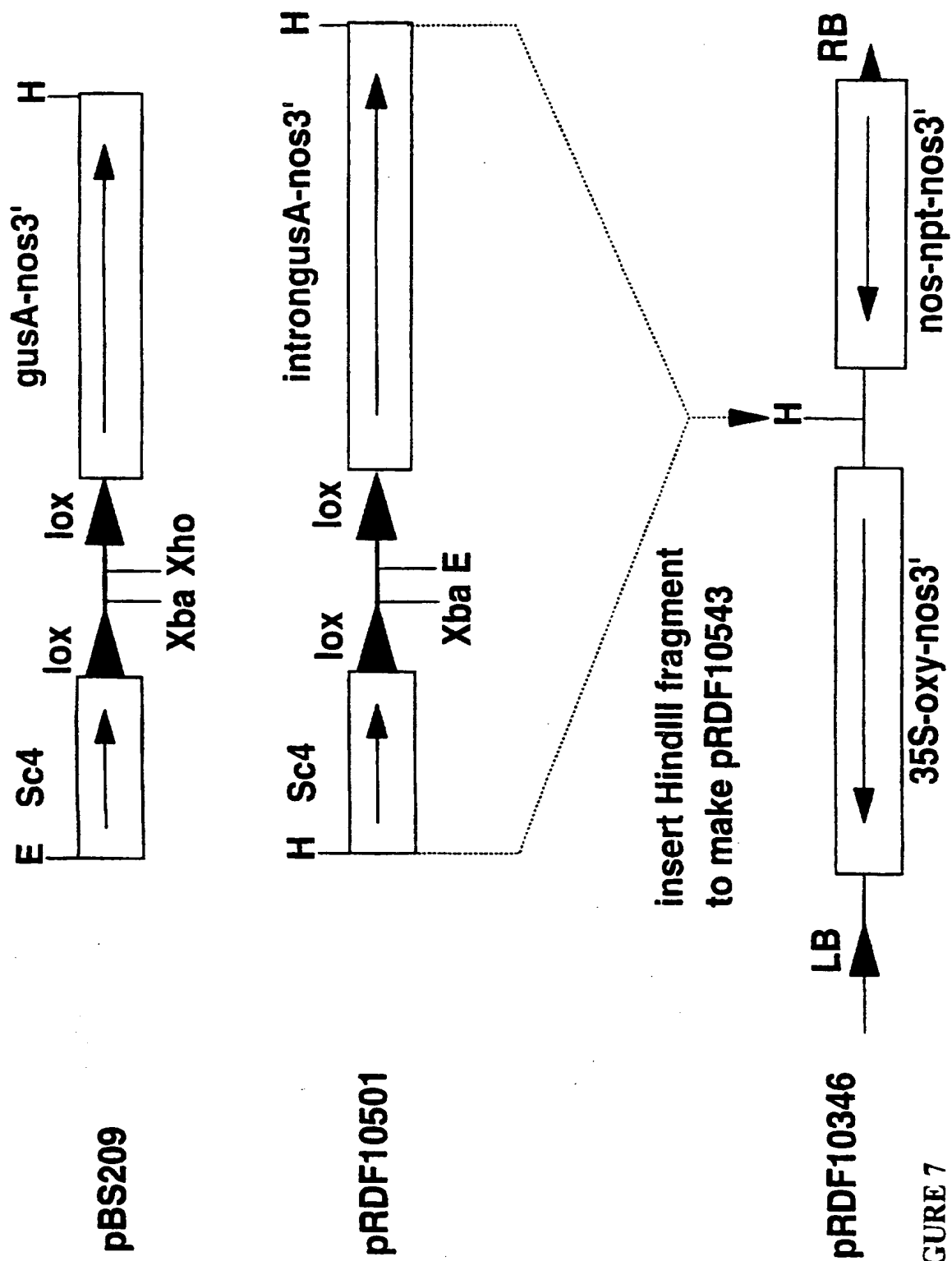


FIGURE 7

11/15

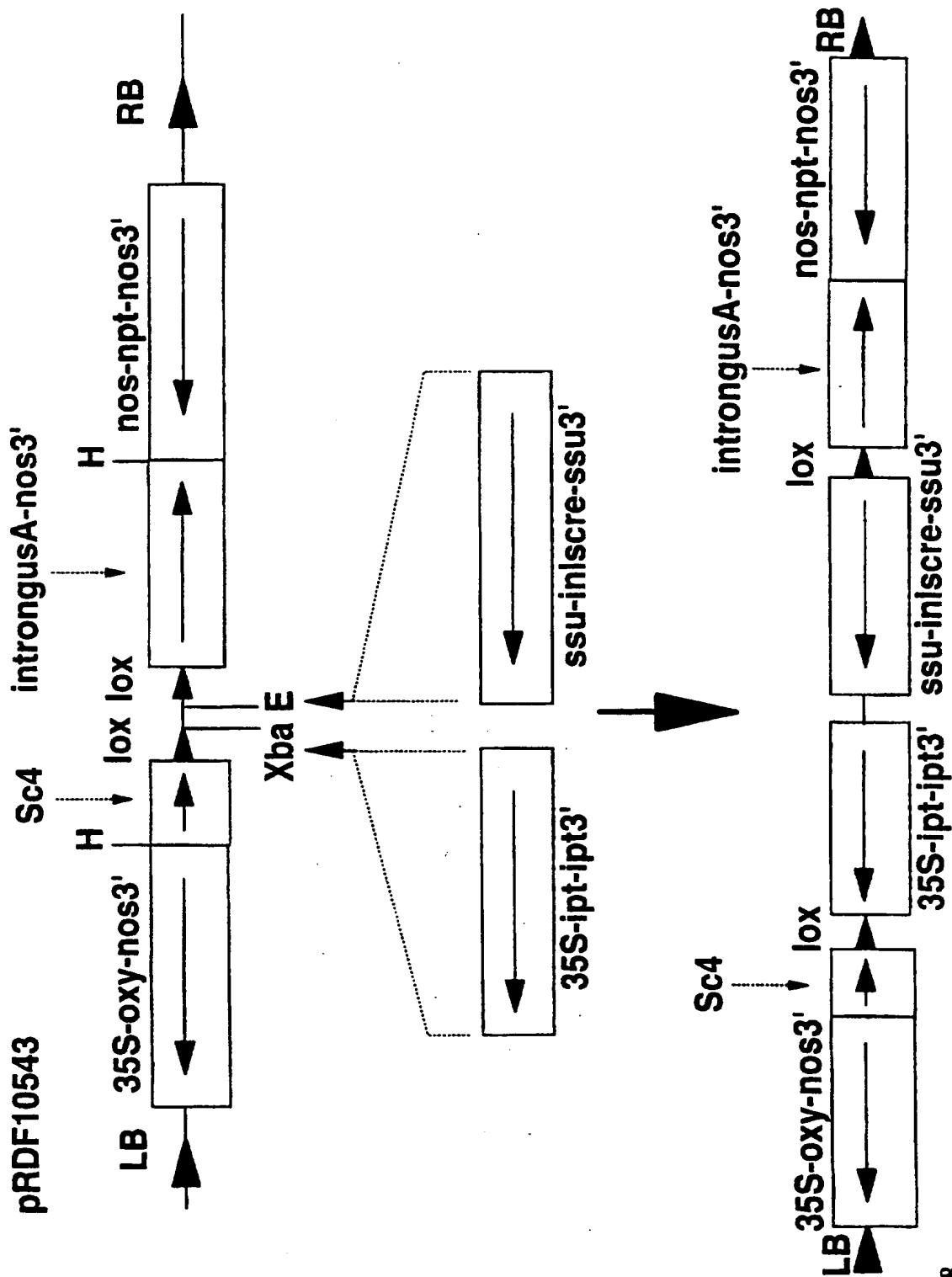
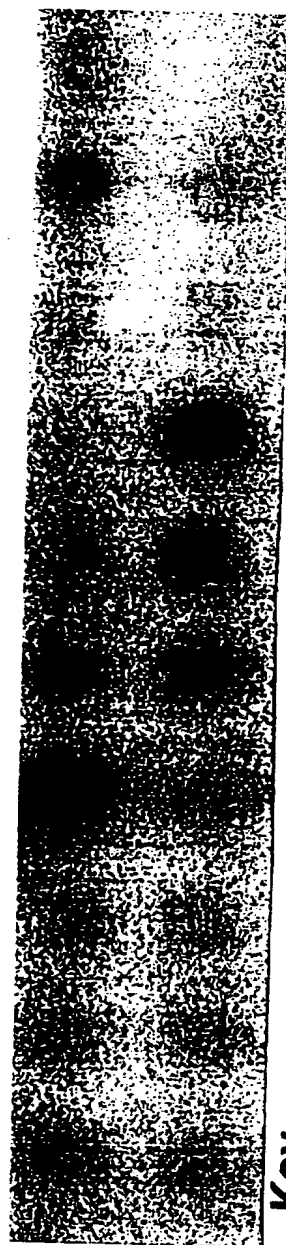


FIGURE 8

12/15



Key

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	C	C		

FIGURE 9

13/15



FIGURE 10

14/15



FIGURE 11

15/15



FIGURE 12

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

PCT/AU 97/00197

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

Int Cl⁶: C12N 15/11, 15/53

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

WPAT, CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS - Keywords below

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched
JAPIO, MEDLINE - Keywords below

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)
WPAT, JAPIO; CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS, MEDLINE - Keywords: recombinase (WPAT, JAPIO); genetic vectors, recombination (control terms), recombinase (CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS, MEDLINE)

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	WO 93/01283 (THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA - THE SECRETARY OF AGRICULTURE) published 21 January 1993, cpd 8 July 1991 (see entire document)	1-70
A	Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, Vol. 88, December 1991, E.C.Dale & D.W.OW, "Gene transfer with subsequent removal of the selection gene from the host genome", pp. 10558-10562 (see entire document)	1-70
A	Plant Molecular Biology, Vol. 18, 1992, C.C.Bayley et al., "Exchange of gene activity in transgenic plants catalyzed by the Cre-lox site-specific recombination system", pp. 353-361 (see entire document)	1-70



Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C



See patent family annex

* Special categories of cited documents:

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
 "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
 "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
 "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
 "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
 "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
 "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
 "&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search
16 June 1997

Date of mailing of the international search report
26 JUN 1997

Name and mailing address of the ISA/AU
AUSTRALIAN INDUSTRIAL PROPERTY ORGANISATION
PO BOX 200
WODEN ACT 2606
AUSTRALIA Facsimile No.: (06) 285 3929

Authorized officer

J.H. CHAN

Telephone No.: (06) 283 2340

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No.

PCT/AU 97/00197

This Annex lists the known "A" publication level patent family members relating to the patent documents cited in the above-mentioned international search report. The Australian Patent Office is in no way liable for these particulars which are merely given for the purpose of information.

Patent Document Cited in Search Report		Patent Family Member	
WO	93/01283	CA	2 073 412
END OF ANNEX			



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification ⁶ : C12N 15/11, 15/53	A1	(11) International Publication Number: WO 97/37012 (43) International Publication Date: 9 October 1997 (09.10.97)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/AU97/00197 (22) International Filing Date: 27 March 1997 (27.03.97) (30) Priority Data: PN 9031 29 March 1996 (29.03.96) AU (71) Applicants (for all designated States except US): COMMON-WEALTH SCIENTIFIC AND INDUSTRIAL RESEARCH ORGANISATION [AU/AU]; Limestone Avenue, Campbell, ACT 2601 (AU). THE AUSTRALIAN NATIONAL UNIVERSITY [AU/AU]; Acton, ACT 2601 (AU). (72) Inventors; and (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): SURIN, Brian, Peter [AU/AU]; 45 Carbeen Street, Rivett, ACT 2611 (AU). DE FEYTER, Robert, Charles [AU/AU]; 10 Stoble Place, Monash, ACT 2904 (AU). GRAHAM, Michael, Wayne [AU/AU]; 10 Eleventh Avenue, St. Lucia, QLD 4067 (AU). WATERHOUSE, Peter, Michael [AU/AU]; 5 Banjine Street, O'Connor, ACT 2601 (AU). KEESE, Paul, Konrad [AU/AU]; 10 Morehead Street, Curtin, ACT 2605 (AU). SHAHJAHAN, Ali [AU/AU]; 18 Tipiloura Street, Ngunawal, ACT 2913 (AU).		(74) Agents: SLATTERY, John, Michael et al.; Davies Collison Cave, 1 Little Collins Street, Melbourne, VIC 3000 (AU). (81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, GH, HU, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ARIPO patent (GH, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG). Published <i>With international search report.</i> <i>With indications in relation to deposited biological material furnished under Rule 13bis separately from the description.</i>
(54) Title: SINGLE-STEP EXCISION MEANS (57) Abstract <p>The present invention is directed to the genetic transformation using multiple genetic sequences, wherein one of said genetic sequences encodes a polypeptide possessing excision activity, specifically a site-specific recombinase activity linked to a transgene unit and the use of this genetic construct in the removal of transgenes therefrom. The present invention provides the means to produce genetically-transformed organisms, in particular plants, in which selectable marker genes have been removed, thereby facilitating multiple sequential genetic transformation events using the same selectable marker gene. Accordingly, the invention provides the means for regulating transgene expression in genetically-manipulated organisms, for example to promote differentiation, de-differentiation, or any unidirectional developmental shift of a target cell which requires the time-specific expression of a particular gene. The invention is particularly suited to the promotion of specific organogeneses in plants using organogenesis-promoting transgenes, wherein the organs which subsequently develop in said plants are genetically transformed with a desired gene but lack organogenesis-promoting transgenes.</p>		

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece			TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	ML	Mali	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MN	Mongolia	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MR	Mauritania	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MW	Malawi	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	MX	Mexico	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NE	Niger	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NL	Netherlands	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NO	Norway	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	NZ	New Zealand		
CM	Cameroon			PL	Poland		
CN	China	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CU	Cuba	KZ	Kazakhstan	RO	Romania		
CZ	Czech Republic	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
DE	Germany	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DK	Denmark	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
EE	Estonia	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		

- 1 -

SINGLE-STEP EXCISION MEANS

The present invention relates generally to genetic sequences and their use in the production of genetically-transformed organisms. More particularly, the present invention is directed to the genetic transformation using multiple genetic sequences, wherein one of said genetic sequences encodes a polypeptide possessing excision activity, specifically a site-specific recombinase activity, and uses of same in the removal of transgenes therefrom. The present invention provides the means to selectively remove transgenes from genetically-transformed organisms. The present invention provides the means to produce genetically-transformed organisms, in particular plants, in which selectable marker genes have been removed, thereby facilitating multiple sequential genetic transformation events using the same selectable marker gene. Additionally, the present invention may be used to transiently integrate any genetic material into the chromosome of an organism, such that it may be expressed only while so integrated. Accordingly, this aspect of the invention provides the means for tightly regulating transgene expression in genetically-manipulated organisms, for example to promote differentiation, de-differentiation, or any unidirectional developmental shift of a target cell which requires the time-specific expression of a particular gene. The invention is particularly suited to the promotion of specific organogeneses in plants using organogenesis-promoting transgenes, wherein the organs which subsequently develop in said plants are genetically transformed with a desired gene but lack organogenesis-promoting transgenes.

Bibliographic details of the publications referred to in this specification by author are collected at the end of the description.

Throughout this specification, unless the context requires otherwise, the word "comprise" or variations such as "comprises" or "comprising" will be understood to imply the inclusion of a stated element or integer or group of elements or integers, but not the exclusion of any other element or integer or group of elements or integers.

Improvements in recombinant DNA technology have produced dramatic changes to the nature

- 2 -

of the pharmaceutical and agricultural industries. In particular, methods for the introduction of desirable genetic traits into a wide range of organisms have led to the production of transgenic organisms which are of significant economic value. For example, transgenic crop plants have been produced with improved disease resistance to a range of plant pathogens and insect pests, digestibility and shelf-life, higher productivity and producing novel secondary metabolites.

Known procedures for the production of transgenic organisms mostly involve the introduction thereto of one or more reporter genes and/or selectable marker genes encoding herbicide or antibiotic resistance to facilitate the detection and/or selection of cells which express the gene, however much concern has been raised about the escape of such genes into the environment. Such concerns are of particular significance to transgenic plants which are capable of reproducing asexually or which comprises a significantly out-breeding population pollinated by wind or insects. Clearly, the removal of selectable marker genes from transgenic organisms prior to their release would alleviate such concerns. In the case of reporter genes, their continued expression in a transgenic organism may represent a biological load which compromises productivity gains.

Furthermore, the expression of certain transgenes such as selectable marker genes and reporter genes is often only desirable or necessary during the initial stages of transformation, in order to assess the efficiency of transformation and to identify and/or select transformed cells. Continued expression of such genes in transformed, regenerated tissues may constitute a genetic load on the organism thus obtained. As a consequence, it is often desirable to remove reporter genes from transgenic material prior to commercial application.

25

Furthermore, as each transformation event requires some form of selection, the introduction of multiple novel traits into an organism is limited by the availability of different selectable marker genes. The removal of selectable marker genes following each transformation event would permit the introduction of multiple genes in stages, using the same selectable marker gene.

30

- 3 -

Those skilled in the art are also aware that not all selectable marker genes are of equal utility in the genetic transformation of a particular organism. Clearly, the removal of marker genes following transformation would enable the re-use of an optimum selection system.

5 Known systems for the removal of selected genes from transgenic cells involve the use of site-specific recombination systems, for example the *cre/lox* system (Dale and Ow, 1991; Russell *et al*, 1992) and the *flp/frt* system (Lloyd and Davis, 1994; Lyznik *et al*, 1995) which comprise a loci for DNA recombination flanking a selected gene, specifically *lox* or *frt* genetic sequences, combination with a recombinase, *cre* or *flp*, which specifically contacts
10 said loci, producing site-specific recombination and deletion of the selected gene. In particular, European Patent No. 0228009 (E.I. Du Pont de Nemours and Company) published 29 April, 1987 discloses a method for producing site-specific recombination of DNA in yeast utilising the *cre/lox* system, wherein yeast is transformed with a first DNA sequence comprising a regulatory nucleotide sequence and a *cre* gene and a second DNA sequence
15 comprising a pre-selected DNA segment flanked by two *lox* sites such that, upon activation of the regulatory nucleotide sequence, expression of the *cre* gene is effected thereby producing site-specific recombination of DNA and deletion of the pre-selected DNA segment. United States Patent No. 4,959,317 (E.I. Du Pont de Nemours and Company) filed 29 April 1987 and International Patent Application No. PCT/US90/07295 (E.I. Du Pont de Nemours
20 and Company) filed 19 December, 1990 also disclose the use of the *cre/lox* system in eukaryotic cells.

Furthermore, International Patent Application No. PCT/US92/05640 (The United States of America as represented by the Secretary of Agriculture, USA) filed 6 July, 1992 discloses
25 a method of excising and segregating selectable marker genes in higher plants using site-specific recombination systems such as the *cre/lox* or *flp/frt* systems wherein plant cells are first transformed with a recombinant vector which contains a plant-expressible selectable marker gene operably linked to loci for DNA recombination and the selectable marker gene is subsequently excised from transformed plants by further transforming the plant cells with
30 a second recombinant vector which contains a plant-expressible, site-specific recombinase

- 4 -

gene or, alternatively, by cross-pollinating the first-mentioned transformed plant with a second transformed plant which expresses a recombinant site-specific recombinase. As a consequence, the selectable marker gene contained in the first-mentioned transformed plant is excised. According to PCT/US92/05640, the recombinant site-specific recombinase gene
5 is also linked to a selectable marker gene which must be removed to produce a plant which is free of selectable marker transgenes. This approach, therefore, requires at least one generation of conventional plant breeding to remove the second selectable marker gene.

A requirement for the operation of site-specific recombination systems is that the loci for
10 DNA recombination and the recombinase enzyme contact each other *in vivo*, which means that they must both be present in the same cell. The prior art means for excising unwanted transgenes from genetically-transformed cells all involve either multiple transformation events or sexual crossing to produce a single cell comprising *both* the loci for DNA recombination and the site-specific recombinase.

15

Where multiple transformations are performed to achieve this end, several selectable marker genes must also be employed, thereby making their removal from the transformed plant material more difficult. As International Patent Application No. PCT/US92/05640 (USDA) demonstrates, the removal of unwanted selectable marker genes following multiple
20 transformation events, requires a resort to conventional breeding approaches. These approaches thus involve extensive manipulation of transgenic material.

Furthermore, since all of the prior art requires some degree of breeding, the approaches taken are not generally applicable to asexually propagating species or clonally-propagated genetic
25 stocks.

In work leading up to the present invention, the inventors sought to develop an improved system for the removal, deletion or excision of transgenes from genetically-transformed cells, which overcomes the disadvantages of the prior art. Accordingly, the inventors have
30 produced a genetic construct which facilitates the precise excision of genetic material in a

- 5 -

single generation, without the need for sexual crossing. The inventors have further defined an efficient method for the single-step removal, deletion or excision of transgenes, in particular selectable marker genes, reporter genes, hormone-biosynthesis genes, hormone-encoding genes or genetic sequences which encode one or more polypeptides capable of
5 regulating hormone levels, from transformed cells.

Accordingly, one aspect of the present invention provides a genetic construct comprising a first expression cassette which contains a recombinase genetic unit linked to a transgene unit, wherein said expression cassette is flanked by two recombination loci placed upstream and
10 downstream thereof.

The present invention is particularly useful in the removal, deletion or excision of transgenes from vegetatively- or clonally propagated species such as, but not limited to, potatoes, sweet potatoes, jerusalem artichoke, taro or yams, fibre or wood tree crops such as *Eucalyptus ssp.*
15 or *Pinus ssp.*, aspen, ornamental plants such as roses, fuschias, azaleas carnations, camelias or gardenias, citrus crops such as oranges, lemons, grapefruit, tangerines or limes, fruit tress such as apples or pears, berry fruits such as strawberry, raspberry, loganberry or blackberry, tropical crops such as sugarcane, tobacco, bananas, plantain or pineapples or asparagus, amongst others.

20

The invention also permits the introduction of several unlinked transgenes into a single cell *via* independent transformation events, using the same selectable marker gene or reporter gene.

25 Reference herein to a "gene" or "genes" is to be taken in its broadest context and includes:

(i) a classical genomic gene consisting of transcriptional and/or translational regulatory sequences and/or a coding region and/or non-translated sequences (i.e. introns, 5'- and 3'-untranslated sequences); and/or

(ii) mRNA or cDNA corresponding to the coding regions (i.e. exons) and 5'- and 3'-

30 untranslated sequences of the gene; and/or

- 6 -

(iii) a structural region corresponding to the coding regions (i.e. exons) optionally further comprising untranslated sequences and/or a heterologous promoter sequence which consists of transcriptional and/or translational regulatory regions capable of conferring expression characteristics on said structural region.

5

The term "gene" is also used to describe synthetic or fusion molecules encoding all or part of a functional product.

As used herein, the term "transgene" shall be taken to refer to any nucleic acid molecule, including, but not limited to DNA, cDNA, mRNA, tRNA, rRNA, synthetic oligonucleotide molecule, ribozyme, antisense molecule, co-suppression molecule, structural gene, wherein said nucleic acid molecule is introduced into the genome of a cell as an addition to the complement of genetic material present in said cell in the absence of said nucleic acid molecule. In the present context, a transgene is generally integrated into one or more chromosome(s) of the cell, until it is excised therefrom according to the performance of the present invention.

The term "oligonucleotide" refers to any polymer comprising the nucleotides adenine, cytidine, guanine, thymidine, or inosine, or functional analogues or derivatives thereof, capable of being incorporated into a polynucleotide molecule.

The term "synthetic oligonucleotide" refers to any oligonucleotide as hereinbefore defined which is produced by synthetic means, whether or not it is provided directly from said synthetic means.

25

Those skilled in the art will be aware that the term "ribozyme" refers to a synthetic RNA molecule which comprises a hybridising region complementary to two regions, each of at least 5 contiguous nucleotide bases in the target sense mRNA. In addition, ribozymes possess highly specific endoribonuclease activity, which autocatalytically cleaves the target sense mRNA. A complete description of the function of ribozymes is presented by Haseloff and

30

- 7 -

Gerlach (1988) and contained in International Patent Application No. WO89/05852. The present invention extends to ribozymes which target any sense mRNA, thereby hybridising to said sense mRNA and cleaving it, such that it is no longer capable of being translated to synthesise a functional polypeptide product, subject to the proviso that said ribozyme is
5 contained within a genetic construct according to any embodiment described herein.

An "antisense molecule" is an RNA molecule which is transcribed from the complementary strand of a nuclear gene to that which is normally transcribed to produce a "sense" mRNA molecule capable of being translated into a polypeptide or peptide sequence. The antisense
10 molecule is therefore complementary to the sense mRNA, or a part thereof. Although not limiting the mode of action of the antisense molecules of the present invention to any specific mechanism, the antisense RNA molecule possesses the capacity to form a double-stranded mRNA by base pairing with the sense mRNA, which may prevent translation of the sense mRNA and subsequent synthesis of a polypeptide gene product.

15

"Co-suppression" as used herein refers to the reduction in expression of an endogenous gene in a cell that occurs when one or more copies of said gene, or one or more copies of a substantially similar gene are introduced into the cell, regardless of whether or not said endogenous gene is integrated into the chromosome(s) of the cell or maintained as an episome
20 or plasmid therein.

The term "co-suppression molecule" shall be taken to refer to any isolated nucleic acid molecule which is used to achieve co-suppression of an endogenous gene in a cell as hereinbefore defined.

25

The term "transgenic organism" shall be taken to refer to any organism that has a transgene as hereinbefore defined introduced into its genome.

The term "selectable marker gene" shall be taken to refer to any gene as hereinbefore defined,
30 the expression of which in a cell may be utilised to detect and/or select for the presence of

- 8 -

a transgene to which said selectable marker gene is linked or which said selectable marker gene has been co-transformed.

The term "reporter gene" shall be taken to refer to any gene which, when expressed, produces a polypeptide or enzyme capable of being assayed, for example the bacterial chloramphenicol acetyltransferase gene, β -glucuronidase gene and firefly luciferase gene, amongst others. Those skilled in the art will be aware that the coding region of a reporter gene may be placed in operable connection with a promoter sequence such that expression of said reporter gene may be monitored to determine the pattern of expression regulated by said promoter sequence.

As used herein, the terms "hormone gene", "hormone-biosynthesis gene", "hormone-encoding gene", "genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels" or similar term, shall be taken to refer to any gene as hereinbefore defined, in particular a structural gene, which encodes a polypeptide hormone molecule, or alternatively, a gene or structural gene which, when expressed, produces a polypeptide which comprises an enzymatic activity which synthesizes a hormone molecule or a precursor molecule thereof.

As used herein, the term "hormone" encompasses any chemical substance secreted by an endocrine gland of an animal or any plant growth regulatory substance such as, but not limited to, auxins, cytokinins, ethylene, gibberellins, abscisic acid, steroids, prostaglandins, oestrogens, testosterone and progesterones, amongst others.

The term "expression cassette" as used herein refers to a nucleic acid molecule comprising one or more genetic sequences or genes suitable for expression in a cell such as a eukaryotic or prokaryotic cell. In its present context, an expression cassette is particularly preferred to be suitable for expression in a eukaryotic cell such as a plant, animal or yeast cell. In a most particularly preferred embodiment, an expression cassette is suitable for expression in a plant cell.

- 9 -

As used herein, the term "recombinase genetic unit" shall be taken to refer to any genetic sequence which comprises a recombinase gene in a format suitable for constitutive or inducible expression in a cell.

- 5 Hereinafter the term "recombinase gene" shall be taken to refer to a gene as hereinbefore defined which comprises a sequence of nucleotides which encodes or is complementary to a sequence of nucleotides which encodes a site-specific recombinase enzyme or polypeptide having site-specific recombinase activity.
- 10 A "site-specific recombinase" is understood by those skilled in the relevant art to mean an enzyme or polypeptide molecule which is capable of binding to a specific nucleotide sequence, in a nucleic acid molecule preferably a DNA sequence, hereinafter referred to as a "recombination locus" and induce a cross-over event in the nucleic acid molecule in the vicinity of said recombination locus. Preferably, a site-specific recombinase will induce
- 15 excision of intervening DNA located between two such recombination loci.

The terms "recombination locus" and "recombination loci" shall be taken to refer to any sequence of nucleotides which is recognized and/or bound by a site-specific recombinase as hereinbefore defined.

20

- As used herein the term "transgene unit" shall be taken to refer to any genetic sequence which comprises a transgene as hereinbefore defined, in particular a structural gene selected from the list comprising reporter gene, selectable marker gene, hormone biosynthesis gene or hormone-encoding gene or a genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of
- 25 regulating hormone levels, or a ribozyme, antisense molecule, co-suppression molecule or other nucleic acid molecule.

- According to this embodiment of the present invention, it is preferred that the recombinase genetic unit comprise a genetic sequence which encodes a site-specific recombinase placed
- 30 upstream or 5' of a terminator sequence and operably under the control of a first promoter

- 10 -

sequence.

The term "terminator" refers to a DNA sequence at the end of a transcriptional unit which signals termination of transcription. Terminators are 3'-non-translated DNA sequences
5 containing a polyadenylation signal, which facilitates the addition of polyadenylate sequences to the 3'-end of a primary transcript. Terminators active in plant cells are known and described in the literature. They may be isolated from bacteria, fungi, viruses, animals and/or plants. Examples of terminators particularly suitable for use in the genetic constructs of the present invention include the nopaline synthase (NOS) gene terminator of
10 *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*, the terminator of the Cauliflower mosaic virus (CaMV) 35S gene, the *zein* gene terminator from *Zea mays*, the ribulose -1, 5-biphosphate carboxylase small subunit gene (*rbcS 1a*) terminator, and the isopentenyladenine transferase (*ipt*) terminator, amongst others.

15 Reference herein to a "promoter" is to be taken in its broadest context and includes the transcriptional regulatory sequences of a classical genomic gene, including the TATA box which is required for accurate transcription initiation, with or without a CCAAT box sequence and additional regulatory elements (i.e. upstream activating sequences, enhancers and silencers) which alter gene expression in response to developmental and/or external
20 stimuli, or in a tissue-specific manner. A promoter is usually, but not necessarily, positioned upstream or 5', of a structural gene, the expression of which it regulates. Furthermore, the regulatory elements comprising a promoter are usually positioned within 2 kb of the start site of transcription of the gene.

25 In the present context, the term "promoter" is also used to describe a synthetic or fusion molecule, or derivative which confers, activates or enhances expression of a structural gene or recombinase gene in a cell, in particular a plant cell. Preferred promoters may contain additional copies of one or more specific regulatory elements, to further enhance expression of the gene and/or to alter the spatial expression and/or temporal expression. For example,
30 regulatory elements which confer copper inducibility may be placed adjacent to a heterologous

- 11 -

promoter sequence driving expression of a structural gene or recombinase gene, thereby conferring copper inducibility on the expression of said gene.

Placing a gene operably under the control of a promoter sequence means positioning the said
5 gene such that its expression is controlled by the promoter sequence. Promoters are generally positioned 5' (upstream) to the genes that they control. In the construction of heterologous promoter/structural gene combinations it is generally preferred to position the promoter at a distance from the gene transcription start site that is approximately the same as the distance between that promoter and the gene it controls in its natural setting, i.e., the gene from which
10 the promoter is derived. As is known in the art, some variation in this distance can be accommodated without loss of promoter function. Similarly, the preferred positioning of a regulatory sequence element with respect to a heterologous gene to be placed under its control is defined by the positioning of the element in its natural setting, i.e., the genes from which it is derived. Again, as is known in the art, some variation in this distance can also occur.

15

Examples of promoters suitable for use in genetic constructs of the present invention include viral, fungal, animal and plant derived promoters. In a particularly preferred embodiment, the promoter is capable of conferring expression in a eukaryotic cell, especially a plant cell. The promoter may regulate the expression of a gene constitutively, or differentially with
20 respect to the tissue in which expression occurs or, with respect to the developmental stage at which expression occurs, or in response to external stimuli such as physiological stresses, or plant pathogens, or metal ions, amongst others. Examples of preferred promoters according to the present invention include, but are not limited to the CaMV 35S promoter, NOS promoter, octopine synthase (OCS) promoter, Sc1 promoter or Sc4 promoter from
25 subterranean clover stunt virus, seed-specific promoter such as the vicillin promoter or a derivative thereof, floral-specific promoter such as *apetala-3*, anther-specific promoter, tapetum-specific promoter, root-specific promoter, leaf-specific promoter such as the *Arabidopsis thaliana rbcS 1a* promoter or other *rbcS* promoter sequence, stem-specific promoter, light-inducible promoter such as the *Arabidopsis thaliana rbcS 1a* promoter or
30 other *rbcS* promoter sequence, metal-inducible promoter such as the copper-inducible

- 12 -

promoter, heat-shock promoter or other environmentally-inducible promoter such as those induced by anaerobiosis or hypoxia or wound-inducible promoter, amongst others. Those skilled in the art will recognise that the choice of promoter will depend upon the nature of the cell being transformed and when expression of the recombinase, structural gene or other gene
5 contained in the genetic construct of the invention is required.

Those skilled in the art will be aware that, in order for a site-specific recombinase polypeptide or enzyme to function in a eukaryotic cell it must be brought into contact with the substrate molecule upon which it acts (i.e. a nucleic acid molecule such as DNA). Furthermore, it is
10 often desirable to ensure that said recombinase is localised in the nucleus of a eukaryotic cell, for example where the recombinase is required to be expressed in stably-transformed cells where the target DNA upon which the recombinase acts has been incorporated or integrated into the genome of the cell.

15 Accordingly, the recombinase genetic unit of the genetic construct described herein may be further modified in a particularly preferred embodiment to include a genetic sequence which encodes a nuclear localisation signal placed in-frame with the coding region of the recombinase gene. More preferably, the genetic sequence encoding a nuclear localisation signal is placed in-frame at the 5'-terminus or the 3'-terminus, but most preferably at the 5'-
20 terminus, of the coding region of the recombinase gene.

By "in-frame" means that the genetic sequence which encodes the nuclear localisation signal is in the same open reading frame as the genetic sequence which encodes the recombinase with no intervening stop codons, such that when the transcript of the recombinase genetic unit
25 is translated, a single fusion polypeptide is produced which comprises a sequence of amino acids corresponding to the summation of the individual amino acid sequences of the nuclear localisation signal and the recombinase polypeptides.

In the context of the present invention, the essential feature of the recombinase gene is the
30 structural gene region or a derivative thereof which at least encodes a functional site-specific

- 13 -

recombinase enzyme. Accordingly, the structural region of a recombinase gene may be any nucleic acid molecule which is capable of encoding a polypeptide having recombinase activity, optionally further comprising one or more intron sequences, 5'-untranslated sequence or 3'-untranslated sequence.

5

Preferred recombinase genes according to the present invention include the *cre* gene (Abremski *et al*, 1983) and *flp* gene (Golic *et al*, 1989; O'Gorman *et al*, 1991). In a particularly preferred embodiment of the present invention, the recombinase gene is the *cre* gene or a homologue, analogue or derivative thereof which is capable of encoding a functional site-specific recombinase.

10

The relative orientation of two recombination loci in a nucleic acid molecule or genetic construct may influence whether the intervening genetic sequences are deleted or excised or, alternatively, inverted when a site-specific recombinase acts thereupon. In a particularly preferred embodiment of the present invention, the recombination loci are oriented in a configuration relative to each other such as to promote the deletion or excision of intervening genetic sequences by the action of a site-specific recombinase upon, or in the vicinity of said recombination loci.

15

Preferred recombination loci according to the present invention are *lox* and *frt*, to be used in combination with *cre* and *flp* recombinase genes, respectively. Other recombinase/recombination loci systems are not excluded. In a most particularly preferred embodiment, however, the recombination loci are *lox* sites, such as *lox P*, *lox B*, *Lox L* or *lox R* or functionally-equivalent homologues, analogues or derivatives thereof.

25

Lox sites may be isolated from bacteriophage or bacteria by methods known in the art (Hoess *et al*, 1982). It will also be known to those skilled in the relevant art that *lox* sites may be produced by synthetic means, optionally comprising one or more nucleotide substitutions, deletions or additions thereto.

30

- 14 -

Also according to this embodiment of the present invention, the transgene unit preferably comprises a structural gene which encodes a polypeptide, for example the coding region of a gene, placed upstream or 5' of a terminator sequence and operably under the control of a second promoter sequence.

5

The terminator and promoter sequences may be any terminator or promoter referred to *supra* or exemplified herein, amongst others.

The structural gene of the genetic construct of the invention may be any structural gene.

10 Preferably, the structural gene is a selectable marker gene, reporter gene, hormone-biosynthesis gene, hormone-encoding gene or a genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels.

Preferred reporter genes are those genes for which their expression is capable of being
15 assayed, for example the bacterial chloramphenicol acetyl transferase (CAT) gene, bacterial β -glucuronidase (*uidA*, GUS or *gusA*) gene, firefly luciferase (*luc*) gene, green fluorescent protein (*gfp*) gene or other gene which is at least useful as an indicator of expression.

Preferred selectable marker genes include genes which when expressed are capable of
20 conferring resistance on a cell to a compound which would, absent expression of said selectable marker gene, prevent or slow cell proliferation or result in cell death. Preferred selectable marker genes contemplated herein include, but are not limited to antibiotic-resistance genes such as those conferring resistance to ampicillin, Claforan, gentamycin, G-418, hygromycin, kanamycin, neomycin, spectinomycin, tetracycline or a derivative or
25 related compound thereof or alternatively, herbicide-resistance genes such as those conferring resistance to the compounds atrazine, Basta, bialaphos, bromoxinol, Buctril, 2,4-D, glyphosate, phosphinothricin, suphonylurea or a derivative or related compound thereof, amongst others. The compound names "Basta", "Buctril", "claforan" and "G-418" are trademarks.

30

- 15 -

In a particularly preferred embodiment, the selectable marker gene is the neomycin phosphotransferase gene *npt II*, which when expressed confers resistance on a cell to neomycin and kanamycin and related compounds thereof. More preferably, the *nptII* selectable marker gene is placed operably under the control of a promoter suitable for
5 expression in a plant cell.

Preferred hormone-biosynthesis genes, hormone-encoding genes or genetic sequences which encodes one or more polypeptides capable of regulating hormone levels are those genes which encode a polypeptide or enzyme which is involved in at least one biosynthetic step which
10 leads to the production of a plant growth regulatory substance, or at least encode a regulatory polypeptide which is capable of altering the levels of a plant growth regulatory substance in a plant cell.

More preferably, the hormone-biosynthesis or hormone-encoding gene or genetic sequence
15 which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels of the invention, encodes a polypeptide or enzyme which catalyses at least one biosynthetic step leading to the production of a plant growth regulatory substance selected from the list comprising auxins, gibberellins, cytokinins, abscisic acid and ethylene, amongst others, or alternatively, encodes a polypeptide which is capable of altering the levels of one or more of said plant growth
20 regulatory substances in a plant cell.

In a particularly preferred embodiment of the invention, the hormone-biosynthesis or hormone-encoding gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels is a cytokinin gene, more particularly the isopentenyladenine
25 transferase or *ipt* gene. Genetic constructs comprising the *ipt* gene are described herein as "Example 9".

For the present purpose, homologues of a genetic sequence, in particular a structural gene, recombinase gene or recombination locus, shall be taken to refer to an isolated nucleic acid
30 molecule which is substantially the same as, or is functionally identical to, a nucleic acid

- 16 -

molecule of the present invention or its complementary nucleotide sequence, notwithstanding the occurrence within said sequence, of one or more nucleotide substitutions, insertions, deletions, or rearrangements.

5 "Analogues" of a genetic sequence, in particular a structural gene, recombinase gene or recombination locus shall be taken to refer to an isolated nucleic acid molecule which is substantially the same as, or is functionally identical to, a nucleic acid molecule of the present invention or its complementary nucleotide sequence, notwithstanding the occurrence of any non-nucleotide constituents not normally present in said isolated nucleic acid molecule, for
10 example carbohydrates, radiochemicals including radionucleotides, reporter molecules such as, but not limited to DIG, alkaline phosphate or horseradish peroxidase, amongst others.

"Derivatives" of a nucleotide sequence, in particular a structural gene, recombinase gene or recombination locus shall be taken to refer to any isolated nucleic acid molecule which
15 contains significant sequence similarity to said sequence or a part thereof. Generally, the nucleotide sequence of the present invention may be subjected to mutagenesis to produce single or multiple nucleotide substitutions, deletions and/or insertions. Nucleotide insertional derivatives of the nucleotide sequence of the present invention include 5' and 3' terminal fusions as well as intra-sequence insertions of single or multiple nucleotides or nucleotide
20 analogues. Insertional nucleotide sequence variants are those in which one or more nucleotides or nucleotide analogues are introduced into a predetermined site in the nucleotide sequence of said sequence, although random insertion is also possible with suitable screening of the resulting product being performed. Deletional variants are characterised by the removal of one or more nucleotides from the nucleotide sequence. Substitutional nucleotide
25 variants are those in which at least one nucleotide in the sequence has been removed and a different nucleotide or nucleotide analogue inserted in its place.

In an alternative preferred embodiment of the present invention, there is provided a genetic construct comprising a first expression cassette which contains a recombinase genetic unit-
30 linked to a transgene unit as hereinbefore defined, wherein said expression cassette is flanked

- 17 -

by two recombinant loci upstream and downstream thereof and wherein said recombinase genetic unit further comprises the coding region of a *cre* gene or a homologue, analogue or derivative thereof and said recombination loci are further defined as *loxP* sites or a homologue, analogue or derivative thereof.

5

In a further alternative preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a genetic construct comprising a first expression cassette which contains a recombinase genetic unit linked to a transgene unit as hereinbefore defined, wherein said first expression cassette is flanked by two recombinant loci upstream and downstream thereof and wherein said
10 recombinase genetic unit further comprises a genetic sequence which encodes a nuclear localisation signal placed in-frame with the coding region of a *cre* gene or a homologue, analogue or derivative thereof and said recombination loci are further defined as *loxP* sites or a homologue, analogue or derivative thereof.

15 Preferably, the nuclear localisation signal is the SV40 T-antigen type nuclear localisation signal described by Kalderon *et al* (1984).

Those skilled in the art will be aware of how to produce the genetic construct of the invention and of the requirements for obtaining the expression thereof, when so desired, in a specific
20 cell or cell-type under the conditions desired. In particular, it will be known to those skilled in the art that the genetic manipulations required to perform the present invention may require the propagation of the genetic construct described herein or a derivative thereof in a prokaryotic cell such as an *E. coli* cell.

25 To prevent premature excision events, the recombinase gene of the invention should preferably not be expressed to produce a functional recombinase enzyme during these propagation steps and in any case, until so desired. For example, the recombinase gene may be selected or modified such that it is not expressed in a prokaryote cell, for example by modifying codons within the gene to a codon usage not recognised by the prokarote cell.

30

- 18 -

Means for preventing the expression of a recombinase gene in a prokaryotic cell whilst allowing its expression in a eukaryotic cell include, but are not limited to the use of a specific promoter which is not recognised by prokaryotic DNA-dependant RNA polymerases, the use of a highly-regulated inducible promoter such as a copper-inducible promoter under non-
5 inducing conditions, the insertion of an intron sequence into the coding region of the recombinase gene, or the insertion of spurious stop codons into a structural gene such that the protein is not translated in a prokaryotic cell but may be translated in a eukaryotic tRNA suppressor mutant cell or organism which is capable of inserting an amino acid at positions where said spurious stop codons occur. Such means for preventing expression of genetic
10 sequences in prokaryotic cells are well-known to those skilled in the art. The present invention extends to the use of all means for preventing expression of the recombinase gene in a prokaryotic cell.

Furthermore, expression of the recombinase gene or the production of a functional
15 recombinase enzyme should preferably occur only when so desired in a eukaryotic cell, tissue, organ or organism. For example, wherein the genetic construct of the invention comprises a structural gene which is a selectable marker gene, expression of the recombinase gene will not normally be required until selection of transformed cells or tissue carrying the genetic construct of the invention has taken place. In many such instances where a cell has
20 been transformed with a genetic construct of the present invention and subsequently selected, expression of the recombinase gene will only be required when regeneration of tissues, organs or the whole organism from the transformed cell has commenced or been completed.

25 In a further example, wherein the transgene of the transgene unit is a hormone-biosynthesis or hormone-encoding gene or a genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels, expression of said transgene preferably promotes a developmental transition in the transformed cell, for example a transition which leads to differentiation or de-differentiation of cells. In plant cells wherein the structural gene encodes a polypeptide
30 which catalyses the biosynthesis of a plant growth regulatory molecule comprising a cytokinin

- 19 -

such as isopentenyladenine, expression of said structural gene preferably leads to the initiation of adventitious shoot formation. Alternatively, wherein the structural gene encodes a polypeptide which catalyses the biosynthesis of a plant growth regulatory molecule comprising an auxin such as IAA, expression of said structural gene preferably leads to the initiation of
5 adventitious root formation. In these cases, it is important that expression of the recombinase be delayed, or at least minimised, until the developmental transition has in fact occurred and expression of the transgene is no longer required, expression of the recombinase may be induced, thereby leading to excision of the transgene.

10 In a further example, wherein the genetic construct of the invention comprises a structural gene which is a reporter gene, expression of the recombinase gene will not normally be required until the detection of cells which express the reporter gene has taken place.

Those skilled in the art will readily be able to determine the appropriate time when expression
15 of the recombinase gene in a transformed cell, tissue, organ or organism is desirable.

Means for preventing the expression of the recombinase gene in a eukaryotic cell, tissue, organ or organism until so desired includes the use of a tissue-specific promoter which is only capable of conferring significant expression on the recombinase gene in regenerated or
20 regenerating tissues, organs or organisms but not in isolated cells or cell masses or undifferentiated cells or cell masses.

Examples of suitable promoters for use in transgenic plant tissues, organs or organisms for limiting the expression of the recombinase gene thereto include a seed-specific promoter such
25 as the vicillin promoter or a derivative thereof, floral-specific promoter such as *apetala-3*, anther-specific promoter, tapetum-specific promoter, root-specific promoter, leaf-specific promoter such as the *Arabidopsis thaliana rbcS 1a* promoter or other *rbcS* promoter sequence or stem-specific promoter, meristem-specific promoter, amongst other promoter sequences.

30 Additional means for preventing the expression of the recombinase gene in a eukaryotic cell

- 20 -

include the use of an inducible promoter sequence to drive expression thereof, such that no significant recombinase activity is detectable until induction of recombinase gene expression has taken place.

- 5 Examples of inducible promoter sequences suitable for use in plants which may be used to control recombinase gene expression include, but are not limited to a light-inducible promoter such as the *Arabidopsis thaliana rbcS 1a* promoter or other *rbcS* promoter sequence, metal-inducible promoter such as the copper-inducible promoter, heat-shock promoter or other environmentally-inducible promoter such as those induced by anaerobiosis or hypoxia or
10 wound-inducible promoter, amongst others.

The present invention extends to the use of all means for preventing expression of the recombinase gene until so desired in a eukaryotic cell, such as a plant, animal or yeast cell.

- 15 Accordingly, in a particularly preferred embodiment of the present invention, the recombinase gene is modified such that significant expression thereof is limited to a plant or animal tissue, organ or organism, but does not occur in prokaryotic cells such as the bacteria *E. coli* or *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* or in isolated cells or cell masses or undifferentiated cells or cell masses derived from eukaryotes.

20

- More particularly, said recombinase gene is modified by the insertion of an intron sequence therein, which is not removed from the primary transcript produced in bacterial cells, thereby resulting in the production of an inactive recombinase enzyme in such cells. In contrast, eukaryotic cells do possess the means for correctly processing primary transcripts which
25 contain an intron sequence and, as a consequence, the intron inserted into a recombinase gene according to this embodiment will be removed from the primary transcript thereof, resulting in the expression of an active recombinase enzyme in eukaryotic cells capable of transcribing said recombinase gene.

- 30 Even more particularly, said recombinase gene, modified as described herein, is placed under

the control of the *Arabidopsis thaliana rbcS 1a* promoter or the Sc4 promoter.

The genetic construct of the present invention is particularly suitable for the transformation of a eukaryotic cell to introduce novel genetic traits thereto, in addition to the provision of
5 resistance characteristics described herein to herbicides, antibiotics or other toxic compounds. Such additional novel traits may be introduced in a separate genetic construct or, alternatively on the same DNA molecule as the genetic constructs already described herein. Those skilled in the art will recognise the significant advantages, in particular in terms of reduced genetic manipulations and tissue culture requirements and increased cost-effectiveness, of including
10 genetic sequences which encode such additional traits and the first expression cassette described herein, in a single genetic construct.

Accordingly, an alternative embodiment of the present invention provides a genetic construct comprising:

- 15 (i) a first expression cassette which contains a recombinase genetic unit linked to a transgene unit as hereinbefore defined;
- (ii) two recombinant loci flanking said first expression cassette; and
- (iii) a second expression cassette comprising a transgene for introduction into a eukaryotic cell such as a plant cell or animal cell, wherein said second expression
20 cassette is juxtaposed to one of said recombination loci or separated therefrom by a spacer region of at least 2 nucleotides in length and wherein said second expression cassette is further separated from said first expression cassette.

The distance separating the second expression cassette and the first expression cassette flanked
25 by recombination loci may be varied and, for the present purpose, it is essential only that sufficient distance separate said second expression cassette from said first expression cassette flanked by recombination loci such that, when excision of the expression cassette has taken place, said transgene of the second expression cassette is not also excised.

30 Preferably, the spacer region is at least 6 nucleotides in length, more preferably at least 10

- 22 -

nucleotides in length and still more preferably at least 50 nucleotides in length.

According to this embodiment, the transgene of the second expression cassette may be any gene as hereinbefore defined, including genes which encode antisense, ribozyme or co-suppression molecules and is not in any way to be limited to a transgene capable of being translated into a functional enzyme or polypeptide.

In an alternative embodiment, the genetic construct of the present invention is further modified such that the first expression cassette flanked by recombinant loci is inserted into, or embedded within, a second expression cassette which comprises a transgene and terminator placed operably under the control of a promoter sequence, wherein said insertion prevents the expression of the second expression cassette.

The transgene of the second expression cassette may be any transgene as hereinbefore defined. In a particularly preferred embodiment of the invention, the transgene of the second expression cassette is a structural gene, for example a reporter gene, selectable marker gene, hormone-biosynthesis gene or hormone-encoding gene or a genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide which regulates hormone levels, as hereinbefore defined, or other structural gene sequence.

Preferred reporter genes are selected from the list comprising CAT, GUS, *luc* or *gfp* genes, amongst others. Additional transgenes are not excluded. Suitable promoters or terminators are those described previously.

According to this embodiment of the invention, the first expression cassette flanked by recombination loci may be inserted into the second expression cassette at any site which disrupts expression of the transgene of said second expression cassette, such as between the promoter and transgene, or within the transgene sequence.

In a most preferred embodiment, the first expression cassette flanked by recombination loci

- 23 -

is inserted between the promoter and the transgene of the second expression cassette.

The present invention extends to all genetic constructs which comprise the specific arrangements of first expression cassette flanked by recombination loci defined herein and
5 additional genes for introduction into a eukaryotic cell and/or expression therein.

In a further embodiment of the present invention, the genetic construct of the present invention is also suitable for integration into the genome of a cell in which it is expressed. Those skilled in the art will be aware that, in order to achieve integration of a genetic
10 sequence or genetic construct into the genome of a host cell, certain additional genetic sequences may be required. For example, the successful integration of DNA into the genome of a plant cell mediated by *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* requires the presence of one or more left and/or right T-DNA border regions flanking the genetic sequence to be integrated.

15 Accordingly, the genetic construct of the invention may optionally further comprise additional genetic sequences as required for its integration into the genome of a eukaryotic cell, in particular a plant cell.

Wherein the genetic construct of the invention is intended for use in plants, it is particularly
20 preferred that it be further modified for use in *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation of plants by the inclusion of one or more left and/or right T-DNA border sequences. To facilitate *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation, the first expression cassette flanked by recombination loci and, where applicable, at least the transgene of the second expression cassette, are usually placed between the left and/or right T-DNA border sequences, if more
25 than one of said sequences is present.

Although intended for the transformation of a eukaryotic organism and/or the expression of genes contained therein, the genetic constructs of the present invention may need to be
30 propagated in a prokaryotic organism such as the bacteria *Escherichia coli* or *Agrobacterium*

tumefaciens. Accordingly, the genetic constructs described herein may further comprise genetic sequences corresponding to a bacterial origin of replication and/or a selectable marker gene such as an antibiotic-resistance gene, suitable for the maintenance and replication of said genetic construct in a prokaryotic organism. Such sequences are well-known in the art.

5 Usually, an origin of replication or a selectable marker gene suitable for use in bacteria is physically-separated from those genetic sequences contained in the genetic construct which are intended to be expressed or transferred to a eukaryotic cell, or integrated into the genome of a eukaryotic cell.

10 The present invention extends to all genetic constructs essentially as defined herein, which include further genetic sequences intended for the maintenance and/or replication of said genetic construct in prokaryotes and/or the integration of said genetic construct or a part thereof into the genome of a eukaryotic cell or organism.

15 The genetic constructs of the present invention are useful in producing genetically-transformed cells and/or for the removal of transgenes from genetically-transformed organisms, in particular eukaryotes such as plants and animals. More particularly, the genetic constructs are used for the transformation of plants with selectable marker genes and/or reporter genes and the subsequent excision in a single-step of said genes.

20

Accordingly, a further aspect of the present invention provides a method of removing a transgene from a cell transformed with the genetic construct described according to any of the embodiments herein, said method comprising expressing the recombinase genetic unit of said genetic construct for a time and under conditions sufficient for a site-specific recombinase to
25 be expressed and at least excise the first expression cassette of said genetic construct or a fragment thereof sufficient to disrupt expression of the transgene of said first expression cassette.

Preferably, the transgene is a selectable marker gene or a reporter gene or a hormone-
30 biosynthesis gene or hormone-encoding gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide

- 25 -

capable of regulating hormone levels, as hereinbefore defined.

In an alternative embodiment, wherein the transgene of the first expression cassette is to be expressed prior to its excision, this aspect of the invention relates to a method of transiently

5 expressing a transgene in a stably transformed cell, said method comprising:

- (i) stably transforming said cell with a genetic construct comprising a first expression cassette flanked by recombination loci, optionally further comprising a second expression cassette, as described herein;
- (ii) expressing the transgene of the first expression cassette in said stably
10 transformed cell; and
- (iii) expressing the recombinase genetic unit of said genetic construct for a time and under conditions sufficient for a site-specific recombinase to be expressed and at least excise the first expression cassette of said genetic construct or a fragment thereof sufficient to disrupt expression of the transgene of said first expression cassette.

15

In a further alternative embodiment, wherein the transgene of the first expression cassette is a structural gene comprising a hormone-biosynthesis gene or hormone-encoding gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels as hereinbefore defined, the expression of which may induce a developmental transition in a cell
20 and/or organogenesis, the genetic construct of the invention may be used to produce a transformed organ. According to this embodiment, the transgene is expressed in a cell transformed with the subject genetic construct, for a time and under conditions sufficient to promote tissue differentiation or organogenesis, or at least the formation of a primordium. Subsequent to this "developmental transition", and preferably prior to extensive cell division,
25 the recombinase genetic unit of the genetic construct is activated or induced *via* induction or de-repression of the promoter operably connected to the recombinase gene therein, leading to expression of the site-specific recombinase encoded therefor and subsequent or concomitant recombinase-dependant excision of the transgene. The differentiated cells may be grown or cultured under appropriate conditions to produce a differentiated transformed organ or
30 organism.

- 26 -

Preferred hormone-encoding genes or hormone-biosynthesis genes according to this embodiment include plant growth regulatory substance-encoding genes such as, but not limited to, the *ipt* gene.

- 5 In particular applications of the invention to the production of transformed plants, the genetic construct comprising a plant growth regulatory substance-encoding gene, such as *ipt*, may be introduced to specific cells of a whole plant, by microinjection or *A.tumefaciens*-mediated transformation or biolistic methods, wherein expression of the plant growth regulatory substance-encoding gene induces organogenesis *in situ*, producing a chimeric plant.
- 10 Alternatively, the genetic construct may also be used to induce organogenesis from undifferentiated cells derived, for example, from a suspension cell culture or callus. Alternatively, the genetic construct according to this embodiment may also be used to induce organogenesis from tissue explant material, for example leaf discs, stem sections, root explants. Those skilled in the art will be aware of the technology requirements for introducing
- 15 the genetic construct into such plant cells.

As exemplified herein, the inventors have shown that temporary expression of the *ipt* gene *in situ*, in plant stem cells, may be used to produce adventitious transgenic shoots on an otherwise untransformed plant.

20

Similarly, the present invention also contemplates the use of auxin-biosynthesis genes to promote adventitious root formation or gibberellin-biosynthesis genes to promote formation of a floral meristem, amongst others.

- 25 This embodiment of the invention is of particular utility to the agriculture and forestry industries, where the regeneration of whole plants from isolated cells may not be efficient or cost-effective and, as a consequence, the production of transformed plants from isolated cells is not a viable or economic proposition. In such cases, the generation of adventitious transformed shoots, roots or other organs may be particularly advantageous, because *in vitro*
- 30 regeneration procedures will not be required.

- 27 -

Additionally, the transformed organs may be removed from the parent plant and cultured by micropropagation techniques known to those skilled in the art, to produce a whole transgenic organism.

- 5 As in all other embodiments of the invention described herein, the genetic construct may comprise additional genetic sequences which are desired to be permanently maintained in the transgenic organ or transgenic organism, following excision of the hormone-encoding or hormone-biosynthesis gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels. Preferably, these genes are linked to the first expression cassette
10 described herein, but placed outside the recombination loci, or alternatively, flanking said recombination loci such that they are not excised alongside the first expression cassette.

Excision of the first expression cassette contained in the genetic construct of the invention provides a means for the introduction of a second genetic construct comprising the same
15 structural gene or a homologue, analogue or derivative thereof. This is of particular utility where the structural gene encodes a selectable marker gene and it is either undesirable or impractical to produce a transgenic organism which expresses one or more selectable marker genes.

- 20 Accordingly, a further aspect of the present invention provides a method for multiply-transforming a cell using a single selectable marker gene, said method comprising the steps of:

- (i) transforming said cell with a genetic construct of the invention substantially as previously described, wherein the transgene of the first expression cassette of said genetic
25 construct is a selectable marker gene;
- (ii) expressing the recombinase gene contained in said genetic construct in said cell or the progeny of said cell to effect excision of the first expression cassette thereof; and
- (iii) transforming the cell obtained in step (ii) with a second genetic construct as hereinbefore described, wherein the transgene of the first expression cassette of said genetic-
30 construct is a selectable marker gene which is substantially the same as the selectable marker

- 28 -

gene use in step (i) or a homologue, analogue or a derivative thereof.

Optionally, said method comprises the further step of repeating step (ii) above.

- 5 Besides marker gene removal and the promotion of organogenesis therein, the inducible excision system described herein has several potential uses.

Firstly, physical methods for plant transformation, including electroporation or CA^{2+} /PEG treatment of protoplasts, biolistic delivery of DNA into plant tissues, or *Agrobacterium*-
10 mediated plant transformation, often result in multiple tandem insertions, which leads in many cases to transgene instability (Matzke and Matzke, 1995). By placing *loxP* sites close to the T-DNA boundaries, and linking excision with reconstitution of a useful gene transcriptional unit, the excision system may be used to excise repeated DNA segments after integration into the plant genome. This would reduce any sequence duplication, thereby preventing transgene
15 instability which arises from DNA methylation, co-suppression/antisense mechanisms or recombination.

Secondly, the approach described herein can, with little modification, be adapted to achieve *in planta* cell-specific ablation. By expressing the *inlscre* gene from a promoter with tight
20 cellular and temporal patterns of expression, and by coupling excision with reconstitution of a cryptic lethal gene, ablation of particular cells or tissues can be achieved, enabling the study of cell lineages *in situ*.

Whilst not wishing to be bound by any theory or mode of action, when the genetic construct
25 of the present invention is inserted into the genome of a eukaryotic cell, in particular a plant cell, expression of any transgene therein may occur, either as constitutive or induced expression. Wherein the transgene of the first expression cassette is a structural gene, in particular a selectable marker gene, such expression facilitates the selection of transformed cells. Wherein the transgene of the first expression cassette is a structural gene, in particular
30 a reporter gene, expression thereof facilitates the detection of cells expressing said reporter

- 29 -

gene or other structural gene. The subsequent induced expression of the recombinase gene produces an active recombinase enzyme which is capable of recognising the two flanking recombination loci producing a genetic recombination event thereabouts, resulting in excision of the first expression cassette. As a consequence, the first expression cassette is deleted from
5 the genome of the transformed cell, which no longer expresses the transgene of the first expression cassette, for example a selectable marker gene or reporter gene.

Wherein the first expression cassette is inserted into, or embedded within a second expression cassette comprising a promoter, transgene and terminator to disrupt expression thereof,
10 excision of the first expression cassette restores expression of the second expression cassette, thereby facilitating detection of the excision event.

A further aspect of the present invention provides a cell transformed with a genetic construct of the invention substantially as previously described.
15

Preferably, the transformed cell is a eukaryotic cell such as a plant, animal or yeast cell. More preferably the cell is a plant cell. In a particularly preferred embodiment, the cell is derived from a plant species which is asexually or clonally propagated. Examples of plants which are particularly suited to the practice of the present invention include, but are not
20 limited to stolon-bearing or tuber-bearing plants such as potatoes, sweet potatoes, jerusalem artichoke, taro or yams, fibre or wood tree crops such as *Eucalyptus ssp.* or *Pinus ssp.*, aspen, ornamental plants such as gerberas, chrysanthemum, orchids, lilies, roses, fuschias, azaleas carnations, camellias or gardenias, citrus crops such as oranges, lemons, grapefruit, tangerines or limes, fruit tress such as apples or pears, berry fruits such as strawberry,
25 raspberry, loganberry or blackberry, tropical crops such as sugarcane, tobacco, bananas, plantain or pineapples or asparagus, amongst others, in particular plants where the removal of transgenes by sexual recombination means is difficult.

In a particularly preferred embodiment of the present invention, the transformed cell is a
30 tobacco cell.

- 30 -

However, the present invention is also useful for removing unwanted genes from *any* transformed plant species which is capable of being propagated vegetatively from cuttings, stolons, tubers or by grafting, layering etc., as well as by sexual hybridisation.

5 Means for introducing recombinant DNA into plant tissue include, but are not limited to, direct DNA uptake into protoplasts (Krens *et al.*, 1982; Paszkowski *et al.*, 1984), PEG-mediated uptake to protoplasts (Armstrong *et al.*, 1990) microparticle bombardment electroporation (Fromm *et al.*, 1985), microinjection of DNA (Crossway *et al.*, 1986), microparticle bombardment of tissue explants or cells (Christou *et al.*, 1988; Sanford, 1988),
10 vacuum-infiltration of plant tissue with nucleic acid, or T-DNA-mediated transfer from *Agrobacterium* to the plant tissue. Representative T-DNA vector systems are described in the following references: An *et al.* (1985); Herrera-Estrella *et al.* (1983a,b); Herrera-Estrella *et al.* (1985).

15 For microparticle bombardment of cells, a microparticle is propelled into a plant cell, in particular a plant cell not amenable to *Agrobacterium* mediated transformation, to produce a transformed cell. Wherein the cell is a plant cell, a whole plant may be regenerated from the transformed plant cell. Alternatively, other non-plant cells derived from multicellular species may be regenerated into whole organisms by means known to those skilled in the art. Any
20 suitable ballistic cell transformation methodology and apparatus can be used in practicing the present invention. Exemplary apparatus and procedures are disclosed by Stomp *et al.* (U.S. Patent No. 5,122,466) and Sanford and Wolf (U.S. Patent No. 4,945,050). When using ballistic transformation procedures, the genetic construct may incorporate a plasmid capable of replicating in the cell to be transformed.

25 Examples of microparticles suitable for use in such systems include 1 to 5 μm gold spheres. The DNA construct may be deposited on the microparticle by any suitable technique, such as by precipitation.

30 Plant species may also be transformed with the genetic construct of the present invention by

- 31 -

the DNA-mediated transformation of plant cell protoplasts and subsequent regeneration of the plant from the transformed protoplasts in accordance with procedures well known in the art.

Any plant tissue capable of subsequent clonal propagation, whether by organogenesis or
5 embryogenesis, may be transformed with a vector of the present invention. The particular tissue chosen will vary depending on the clonal propagation systems available for, and best suited to, the particular species being transformed. Exemplary tissue targets include leaf disks, pollen, embryos, cotyledons, hypocotyls, megagametophytes, callus tissue, existing meristematic tissue (e.g., apical meristem, axillary buds, and root meristems), and induced
10 meristem tissue (e.g., cotyledon meristem and hypocotyl meristem).

The term "organogenesis", as used herein, means a process by which shoots and roots, or other organs, are developed sequentially from meristematic centers.

15 The term "embryogenesis", as used herein, means a process by which shoots and roots develop together in a concerted fashion (not sequentially), whether from somatic cells or gametes.

Plants of the present invention may take a variety of forms. The plants may be chimeras of
20 transformed cells and non-transformed cells; the plants may be clonal transformants (e.g., all cells transformed to contain the expression cassette); the plants may comprise grafts of transformed and untransformed tissues (e.g., a transformed root stock grafted to an untransformed scion in citrus species). The transformed plants may be propagated by a variety of means, such as by clonal propagation or classical breeding techniques. For
25 example, a first generation (or T1) transformed plants may be selfed to give homozygous second generation (or T2) transformed plants, and the T2 plants further propagated through classical breeding techniques.

30 Following excision of the first expression cassette of the genetic construct defined herein, a

- 32 -

small "footprint" may be left in the genome of the transformed cell.

As used herein, the term "footprint" shall be taken to refer to any derivative of a genetic construct described herein which is produced by excision, deletion or other removal of the
5 first expression cassette from the genome of a cell transformed previously with said genetic construct.

A footprint generally comprises at least a single copy of the recombination loci used.
10 However, a footprint may comprise additional sequences derived from the genetic construct, for example nucleotide sequences derived from the recombinase gene unit, left border sequence, right border sequence, first expression cassette, second expression cassette, origin of replication, or other vector-derived nucleotide sequences. More likely, a footprint will comprise, in addition to the single copy of a recombination locus, nucleotide sequences
15 derived from the recombinase gene unit, transgene unit of the first expression cassette, or other first expression cassette sequences.

Accordingly, a footprint is identifiable according to the nucleotide sequence of the recombination locus of the genetic construct. In particular, the footprint will comprise a
20 sequence of nucleotides corresponding or complementary to a *lox* site.

A footprint thus comprises a sequence of at least about 30 nucleotides, preferably about 40 nucleotides, more preferably at least about 50 nucleotides and even more preferably at least about 100 nucleotides derived from the sequences outside (i.e. upstream and downstream) the
25 region of the second expression cassette.

Those skilled in the art will readily be capable of determining whether a cell comprises a footprint of a genetic construct of the invention as hereinbefore defined, using known techniques and without undue experimentation.

- 33 -

Accordingly, the present invention extends to a transformed cell or whole organism which comprises a footprint derived from a genetic construct as hereinbefore defined and to the progeny of said transformed cell or whole organism.

- 5 The present invention is further described with reference to the following non-limiting Figures and Examples.

In the Figures:

- 10 **Figure 1** is a schematic representation of the *cre/lox* site-specific recombination constructs; (A) Site-specific recombination test sequences in plasmid pBS210, and pBS210a, the predicted product of recombination. In pBS210, the *EcoRI-HindIII* fragment containing the Sc4 promoter (Sc4), a 35S promoter-*nptII*-35S3' transcriptional unit (*nptII*) flanked by *loxP* (*lox*) sites (arrowhead) in direct-repeat configuration, and a promoterless *gusA-nos3'* cassette, is
15 shown. *cre/lox* site-specific recombination should remove the *loxP*-bound *nptII* transcriptional unit, producing pBS210a. Restriction enzyme designations: E, *EcoRI*; H, *HindIII*. (B) T-DNA regions of the binary vectors pBS215 and its derivative, pBS229. pBS215 contains the *EcoRI-HindIII* fragment from pBS210 between the T-DNA left (LB) and right border (RB) sequences. In pBS229, a *rbcS 1a* promoter-*inlscre-rbcS 1a3'* cassette
20 (*inlscre*) was cloned into the *XhoI* (X) site of pBS215. Arrows in boxes indicate the direction of transcription.

- Figure 2:** is a photographic representation showing histochemical staining for GUS activity. 2 1/2- week old regenerating tobacco calli were stained for GUS activity using X-gluc. Blue
25 coloration indicative of GUS activity is seen, usually localised but in some cases throughout the regenerating shoot.

- Figure 3** is a photographic representation of a ³²P-labelled autoradiogram showing neomycin phosphotransferase (*NptII*) activity assays. Extracts of two leaves from each plant were
30 assayed for *NptII* activity, and 15 µl of the reaction blotted onto Whatman P-81 paper. The

- 34 -

plant from which the extract was derived is shown (numbers) at the top left corner of each pair of spots. Shown are the *NptII* activity dot blots for five ntBS229 GUS⁺T₀ plants (# 4,7,8,17 and 20), and one GUS⁻ plant (#6) (Figure 3A), and for thirteen ntBS229-4 regenerants (Figure 3B). Included are the activities corresponding to positive (+) and
5 negative (-) controls.

Figure 4a is a schematic representation of the genomic copies of the pBS229 T-DNA construct carried by ntBS229 plants before (panel A) and after the predicted *cre/lox*-mediated site-specific recombination event (panel B). Indicated below each map are the primers
10 (triangles A-E) used for PCR analysis of DNA prepared from these plants. The expected PCR product obtained using each of the primer pairs indicated is represented as a line with the expected size (kb) of the PCR product shown below.

Figure 4b is a photographic representation showing the results of the PCR analysis for
15 ntBS229 T₀ and ntBS229-4 regenerated plants (lanes 1-6), with the primers used in each case indicated above the numbered lanes. Template DNA was isolated from either a chimeric Gus⁺*nptII*⁺ T₀ plant, ntBS229-4 (lanes 1,3,5) or from a typical GUS *nptII* ntBS229-4 regenerant (lanes 2,4,6). Lane S, *EcoRI*-digested SPP1 DNA and *HpaII*-digested pUC19 size markers.

20

Figure 5 is a schematic representation of the *cre/lox* site-specific recombination binary vector plasmids pBS266 and pBS267. Each plasmid contains the Sc4 promoter (Sc4), a *cre* and an Sc1 promoter-*nptII*- Sc3 terminator (Sc1-*nptII*) cassette both flanked by *loxP* (P) sites in direct repeat configuration, and a promoterless *gusA-nos3'* cassette. The *cre* cassette present
25 in pBS266 is pAp1-*inlscre-nos3'* (pAp1-*inlscre*), while in pBS267 it is pVic-*inlscre-nos3'* (pVic-*inlscre*). With both pBS266 and pBS267, *cre/lox* site-specific recombination should remove the *cre* and Sc1-*nptII* cassettes, producing a transcriptionally active Sc4 promoter-driven *gusA* transcriptional unit, as shown. Arrows in boxes indicate the direction of transcription, while the dotted lines represent the T-DNA left border (Lb) and right border
30 (Rb).

- 35 -

Figure 6 is a schematic representation of relevant parts of the *ipt* constructs and related plasmids. In pRDF9574, the *Hind*III fragment containing an enhanced 35S promoter (e35S), tobacco mosaic virus 5' untranslated region (TMV5'), *Nco*I and *Bam*HI restriction sites and *nos*3' termination region is shown. To make pRDF10072, the *Nco*I-*Bam*HI fragment from
5 pRZ4 was inserted between the *Nco*I and *Bam*HI sites of pRDF9574. To make pRDF10086, the *Hind*III fragment from pRDF10072 containing the *ipt* gene was inserted into the *Hind*III site of the binary vector pIG121-Hm (Hiei *et al.*, 1994), between the T-DNA left (LB) and right border (RB) sequences. Arrows in boxes indicate the direction of transcription. Restriction site designations: H, *Hind*III; N, *Nco*I; B, *Bam*HI.

10

Figure 7 is a schematic representation of relevant parts of plasmids used to construct pRDF10543. In pBS209, an *Eco*RI-*Hind*III fragment is shown containing the Sc4 promoter (Sc4), *loxP* (*lox*) sites (large arrowheads) in direct-repeat configuration, *Xba*I and *Xho*I restriction sites, and a *gusA-nos*3' cassette. Several changes were made to pBS209 as
15 described in Example 2 to make pRDF10501, including introduction of an intron into the *gusA* coding region (intron_{gusA}). This *Hind*III fragment was inserted into pRDF10346, a binary vector containing *npt*II (nos-npt-nos3') and *oxy* (35S-oxy-nos3') genes between the T-DNA left (LB) and right border (RB) sequences, to make pRDF10543. Arrows in boxes indicate the direction of transcription. Restriction site designations: H, *Hind*III; E, *Eco*RI;
20 *Xba*I, *Xba*I; *Xho*I, *Xho*I.

Figure 8 is a schematic representation of a genetic construct containing an excisable *ipt* gene. The 35S-*ipt-ipt*3' gene is inserted into the *Xba*I site of pRDF10543, and the product is used for insertion of the *ssu-inscre-ssu*3' fragment from prbcS-inscre. All other designations are
25 as for Figure 7. Excision of the 35S-*ipt-ipt*3' and *SSU-inscre-ssu*3' transgenes via *cre*-mediated recombination at *lox* sites leads to re-constitution of *gusA* gene expression under the control of the Sc4 promoter in transformed plant cells.

Figure 9 is a copy of a photographic representation of a ³²P-labelled autoradiogram showing
30 neomycin phosphotransferase (Npt) activity assays. Extracts of leaves from 17 shoots

- 36 -

(numbers 1-17) that arose after inoculation of tobacco plants with *Agrobacterium* AGL1/pRDF10086 or from control, untransformed leaves (C) were assayed for Npt activity according to McDonnell *et al*, (1987). Shoot Nos. 4, 5, 9, 15, 16, and 17 were clearly positive for Npt activity.

5

Figure 10 is a photographic representation of a shoot (arrow) that arose on a tobacco plant after inoculation with *Agrobacterium* AGL1/pRDF10086. The shoot had a stem that was pale green to white in colour, with thickened leaves and stems, showed obvious loss of apical dominance, and was phenotypically Gus-positive and Npt-positive. The shoot was
10 approximately 10 cm long 9 weeks after inoculation.

Figure 11 is a photographic representation of a shoot, (arrow) approximately 2 cm long, that arose on a tobacco plant after inoculation with *Agrobacterium* AGL1/pRDF10086. The shoot was mostly creamy white in colour with distinct zones of normal green colour. The white
15 zones were Gus-positive, the green zones were Gus-negative.

Figure 12 is a photographic representation of a cluster of shoots (arrow) approximately 2 cm long, that arose on a tobacco plant after inoculation with *Agrobacterium* AGL1/pRDF10086. The shoots were normal green in colour and phenotypically Gus-negative and Npt-negative.
20

- 37 -

EXAMPLE 1**Enzymes and Chemicals.**

Restriction enzymes, DNA polymerase I large fragment (Klenow) and T₄DNA ligase were
5 purchased from New England Biolabs, and AmpliTaq DNA polymerase from Perkin Elmer.
Kanamycin sulfate was purchased from Sigma, and 5-bromo-4-chloro-3-indolyl- β -D-
glucuronic acid (X-gluc) was from Diagnostic Chemicals (Canada). Oligonucleotides were
synthesised on an Applied Biosystems, 394 DNA synthesiser.

10

EXAMPLE 2**Plasmid Constructions.**

Cloning and related techniques were performed essentially as described by Sambrook *et al*
(1989) with minor variations. Nucleotide sequences of plasmid constructs were verified by
15 DNA sequencing of plasmid DNA using the dideoxy chain-termination method (Sanger *et al*,
1977).

(i) Construction of pUC119-cre, pUC119-nlscre and pUC119-inlscre.

20 The *cre* open reading frame (orf) was amplified by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) from the
bacteriophage P1 genome using the 5' *cre* and 3' *cre* oligonucleotide primers (primers D and
E, respectively set forth in Example 4). Using these primer sequences, an *Nco*I site was
introduced at the initiating ATG of the *cre* orf, resulting in a Ser -> Ala change in the amino
acid sequence of the *cre* polypeptide, at amino acid position 2. The amplified DNA fragment
25 was digested with *Eco*RI and cloned into the *Eco*RI site of pUC119 (Vieira and Messing,
1987), creating pUC119-cre, for subsequent modification.

An SV40 T-antigen type nuclear localisation signal (nls), comprising the amino acid sequence
Met-Ala-Pro-Lys-Lys-Lys-Arg-Lys-Val-Thr (Kalderon *et al*, 1984), was introduced upstream
30 of the *cre* coding region in the plasmid pUC119-cre. A double stranded synthetic DNA

- 38 -

fragment encoding nls was produced by primer extension using Klenow enzyme and subsequently cloned into the *Hind*III and *Nco*I sites of the plasmid pUC119-cre, creating pUC119-nlscre. When translated, the *nlscre* orf produces an in-frame fusion polypeptide between nls and cre polypeptides.

5

The third intron of the *Parasponia andersonii* haemoglobin gene (Landsmann *et al.*, 1986) was isolated by PCR and inserted, using the *Pst*I termini introduced by the PCR primers, into plasmid pUC119-nlscre, to disrupt the *nlscre* orf. First, a *Pst*I site was introduced into the *nlscre* orf of pUC119-nlscre without altering the amino acid sequence encoded thereby, using
10 site-directed mutagenesis to substitute T for G at position 264 of the *nlscre* orf (²⁶²CTGCAG). The haemoglobin intron was then cloned as a *Pst*I fragment into the *Pst*I site of pUC119-nlscre, to produce the plasmid pUC119-inlscre.

(ii) Construction of p35S-cre, p35S-nlscre and p35S-inlscre.

15

The *cre*, *nlscre* and *inlscre* genes were cloned from their respective pUC119 plasmids into pJ35SN (Landsmann *et al.*, 1989), creating the plasmids p35S-cre, p35S-nlscre and p35S-inlscre, respectively. In these plasmids, expression of *cre* and its derivatives is under control of the cauliflower mosaic virus 35S (35S) promoter. Furthermore, the nopaline synthase gene
20 polyadenylation signal (*nos*3') is located downstream of the *cre* orf in each plasmid.

(iii) Construction of prbcS-inlscre.

The *Eco*RI fragment of pUC119-inlscre comprising the *inlscre* orf was end-filled using
25 Klenow enzyme and placed upstream of a 0.45 kb *rbcS 1a* polyadenylation signal (*rbcS 1a* 3' end) and operably under the control of the 1.7 kb *A. thaliana rbcS 1a* promoter sequence (Donald and Cashmore, 1990) in pWM5 (Tabe *et al.*, 1995). The resulting construct was designated prbcS-inlscre.

30

- 39 -

(iv) Construction of pBS210

This plasmid, a derivative of the vector pGEM3zf+ (Promega), contained a cryptic *gusA* reporter gene upstream of the *nos3'* polyadenylation signal and placed operably under the control of the Sc4 promoter from the genome of subterranean clover stunt virus (SCSV) (Boevink *et al.*, 1995). A schematic representation of pBS210 is provided in Figure. 1A.

The *gusA* reporter gene was inactive by the insertion of a DNA fragment containing a *loxP*-bound neomycin phosphotransferase gene (*nptII*) expressed from the 35S promoter and 35S polyadenylation signals (35S 3') (Tabe *et al.*, 1995), between the Sc4 promoter and the *gusA* coding sequence. Site-specific recombination of pBS210 in which excision of the *lox*-bound 35S-*nptII*-35S cassette occurs, produces the plasmid pBS210a (Figure. 1A).

15 (v) Construction of pBS215 and pBS229.

The Sc4-*lox*-35S-*nptII*-35S-*lox*-*gusA*-*nos* cassette was cloned out from the plasmid pBS210 (Figure. 1A) as an *EcoRI*-*HindIII* fragment, from upstream of the Sc4 promoter (*EcoRI*) to downstream of the *nos3'* polyadenylation signal (*HindIII*), end-filled using Klenow enzyme and cloned into the end-filled *Bam*HI and *EcoRI* sites of the binary vector pTAB5 (Tabe *et al.*, 1995). The new binary vector thus produced was designated pBS215 (Figure. 1B) in which the *loxP*-bound 35S-*nptII*-35S cassette provided the only selectable marker.

Plasmid pBS215 contains a unique *XhoI* site adjacent to the 35S 3' end of the *nptII* cassette within the region bounded by *loxP*. A blunt-ended *EcoRI* fragment, containing the *rbcS 1a* promoter placed upstream of the *inlscre* orf and *rbcS 1a* 3' end (i.e *rbcS 1a*-*inlscre*-*rbcS 1a*), was sub-cloned from the plasmid prbcS-*inlscre* into the end-filled *XhoI* site of pBS215, creating the plasmid pBS229 (Figure 1B).

vi) Construction of pRDF10072 and pRDF10086

The *ipt-ipt3'* cassette was cloned out from plasmid pRZ4, a derivative of pRZ3 (Ma *et al*, 1997) containing an *NcoI* site at the translation initiator ATG of *ipt*, as an *NcoI-BamHI* fragment (partial digestion with *BamHI*) and inserted between the *NcoI* and *BamHI* sites of pRDF9574 (de Feyter *et al*, 1997) to create pRDF10072 (Figure 6). pRDF9574 contains plant gene expression signals including an enhanced 35S promoter (Kay *et al*, 1987), the tobacco mosaic virus (TMV) 5' untranslated region corresponding to nucleotides 1-67 of TMV (Goelet *et al*, 1982) and the 3' terminator region of a nopaline synthase gene (*nos*). The *HindIII* fragment containing the *ipt* gene of pRDF10072 was inserted into the *HindIII* site of the binary vector pIG121-Hm (Hiei *et al*, 1994) to create pRDF10086 (Figure 6)

(vii) Construction of pRDF10302, pRDF10453 and pRDF10501

pBS209 is identical to pBS210 (Figure 1) except that it lacks the *nptII* gene. pBS209 (Figure 7) contains an Sc4 promoter and a *gusA* coding region flanking a pair of *lox* recombination sites. pBS209 also has unique *XhoI* and *XbaI* sites between the *lox* sites. The *EcoRI* site of pBS209 was converted to a *HindIII* site using an EcoHind adaptor (5' AATTAAGCTT 3'), creating pRDF10302. The Sc4-*lox-gusA-nos3'* cassette contained on pRDF10302 conferred Gus activity to *Agrobacterium* when introduced into the bacterium on a binary plasmid, so an intron was inserted into the *gus* coding region to prevent Gus expression in bacteria. This was achieved by replacing a *Clal-SnaBI* fragment, containing a 5' portion of the *gus* coding region, from pRDF10302 with an *XbaI-SnaBI* fragment from pIG121-Hm (Hiei *et al*, 1994) containing the corresponding 5' portion of the *gus* gene with an intron inserted. The digested *Clal* and *XbaI* ends were endfilled using Klenow enzyme prior to ligation. The resultant plasmid was designated pRDF10453. The S4-*lox-introngusA-nos3'* cassette of pRDF10453 directed expression of Gus activity in tobacco cells in transient assays, but did not confer Gus activity to *Agrobacterium* cells, indicating that insertion of the intron achieved its purpose. An *EcoRI* site was introduced into pRDF10453 at the position of the *XhoI* site using an *XhoEco* adaptor (5' TCGAGAATTC 3'), creating pRDF10501 (Figure 7).

(viii) Construction of pRDF10278 and pRDF10543

A polylinker containing *KpnI*, *SacI* and *EcoRI* sites was deleted from pRPA-BL-429, a plasmid containing a 35S-*oxy-nos3'* gene provided by Rhône-Poulenc, by digestion with *KpnI* 5 (partial) and *EcoRI* followed by blunting with T4 DNA polymerase and recircularisation with T4 DNA ligase, creating pRDF10278. A 2.2 kb *HindIII-KpnI* fragment of pRDF10278 containing the 35S promoter and *oxy* coding region, after blunting the digested *KpnI* end with T4 DNA polymerase, was inserted between the *HindIII* and *BamHI* (endfilled) sites of pIG121-Hm, creating pRDF10346 (Figure 7). The binary vector pRDF10346 contains a *nptII* 10 gene and an *oxy* gene (Stalker *et al*, 1988), driven by *nos* and 35S promoters, respectively. The *HindIII* fragment containing the *Sc4-lox-intronus-nos* cassette from pRDF10501 was inserted into the *HindIII* site of pRDF10346, creating pRDF10543 (Figure 7). This plasmid confers Gus expression and resistance to bromoxynil on plant cells.

15 (ix) Construction of a genetic construct containing an excisable *ipt* gene

The *HindIII* fragment containing the 35S-*ipt-ipt3'* gene from pRDF10072 is inserted into the *XbaI* site of pRDF10543 (Figure 7). This is done readily after half filling the restricted sites, treating the *HindIII* ends with Klenow, dATP and dGTP, and the *XbaI* ends with Klenow, 20 dCTP and dTTP, before ligation of the fragments. The resultant plasmid contains a unique *EcoRI* site which is used for insertion of an *EcoRI* fragment containing the *ssu-inlscre-ssu3'* cassette from prbcS-inlscre, creating a genetic construct that contains excisable *ipt* and *inlscre* genes. This construct is then introduced into *Agrobacterium* for subsequent inoculation into plants.

- 42 -

EXAMPLE 3

Protoplast Assays, Transgenic Plants and Phenotype Analysis.

Protoplasts of *Nicotiana plumbaginifolia* were prepared, electroporated with DNA and
5 assayed for β -glucuronidase (GUS) activity as described by Graham and Larkin (1995).

For *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation of plant material with the plasmid pBS229, pBS229 was transferred into *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* strain LBA4404 and leaf discs of *Nicotiana tabacum* cv. Wisconsin 38 were infected with LBA4404/pBS229 as described by
10 Ellis *et al* (1987), with the following modifications to the plant transformation procedure. Leaf pieces were co-cultivated with *A. tumefaciens* cells containing plasmid pBS229, and maintained in the dark for two weeks on MS medium (Murashige and Skoog, 1962) containing 100 μ g/ml kanamycin sulfate and 500 μ g/ml cefotaxime (Claforan, Hoechst). The leaf pieces were then transferred to the light, and kept on MS media without antibiotic
15 selection.

The GUS phenotype of transformed plant tissue was determined by histochemical staining with X-gluc (Jefferson *et al*, 1987). *NptII* assays were performed on transgenic leaf tissue extract according to (McDonnell *et al*, 1987).

20

EXAMPLE 4

Molecular Analysis of Plant DNA.

25 Plant DNA was prepared according to deFeyter (1996).

DNA was amplified in PCR reactions using 30 cycles of denaturation, annealing and extension at 94°C for 15 sec, 55°C for 30 sec, and 72°C for 1 min, respectively. Reaction products were resolved by electrophoresis in 1.5% (w/v) agarose gels.

30

- 43 -

The sequences of the PCR primers used to analyse plant DNA were as follows:

Primer A: 5'-ATAAGAATGCGGCCGACCCCCGTGCCGGGATCAG-3';

Primer B: 5'-CATCAGAGCAGCCGATTGTCT-3';

Primer C: 5'-GGTTTCTACAGGACGTAACAT-3';

5 Primer D: 5'-GCGGAATTCGTGACCATGGCCAATTTACTGACCG-3';

Primer E: 5'-GCGGAATTCAATCATTTACGCGTTAATGG.

EXAMPLE 5

10 Demonstration of cre/lox-mediated excision in transient expression assays

The strategy described herein is based upon an improvement to the inducible cre/lox-mediated cis-excision of transgenes, in particular selectable marker genes used in plant transformation.

15

The Examples described herein report the preparation of a DNA construct carrying the *cre* gene expressed from a regulatable plant promoter, and a selectable marker gene, *nptII*, which encodes neomycin phosphotransferase. The *cre* and *nptII* transcriptional units are located within the segment of DNA flanked by *loxP* sequences. In attempts to make a cis-acting excision construct by ligation of the *cre* gene, or its derivative containing a nuclear localisation signal (*nlscree*), into a plasmid containing two *loxP* sites in direct repeat configuration, all recovered recombinant plasmids had deletions consistent with cre/lox-mediated excision (data not shown). To prevent premature excision in *E.coli*, the third intron of the *P. andersonii* haemoglobin gene was introduced into the *cre* coding region of the *nlscree* 20 orf. This modified orf, *inlscree*, was able to be cloned into *loxP*-containing plasmids, indicating that the presence of the intron significantly reduced expression of *nlscree* in bacteria.

The *inlscree* orf was then assayed in a recombination test system and its activity compared to that of the *cre* and *nlscree* genes, to determine whether *inlscree* potentially expressed wild-type 30 cre recombinase activity in eukaryotic cells. The recombination substrate in this assay,

- 44 -

plasmid pBS210, carries a *gusA* reporter gene construct rendered inactive by the insertion of the 35S-*nptII*-35S transcriptional unit between the promoter (Sc4) and the *gusA* gene (Figure 1A). The 35S-*nptII*-35S cassette is bound by two *loxP* sites in pBS210, in direct-repeat configuration. A successful cre/*lox*-mediated recombination event should excise the DNA
5 fragment between the two *loxP* sites, removing the *nptII* cassette and producing the expected recombination test product, pBS210a (Figure 1A), thereby activating the Sc4 promoter-derived expression of the *gusA* gene. The Sc4 promoter drives high level GUS expression in tobacco protoplasts and callus, and predominantly vascular expression in tobacco plants (Boevink *et al*, 1996).

10

The recombination mechanism shown in Figure 1A was tested initially in a transient expression assay using transfected tobacco protoplasts. Protoplasts were electroporated in the presence of plasmid pBS210 alone or co-electroporated with pBS210 plus p35S-cre, pBS210 plus p35S-nlscre or pBS210 plus p35S-inlscre. GUS activity was measured after 72 hours.

15 The results obtained (Table 1) indicate that plasmid PBS210 is unable to express GUS in eukaryotic cells, in the absence of cre. The inclusion of a plasmid capable of expressing cre or nlscre in electroporations activated GUS expression of pBS210. Whilst not wishing to be bound by any theory or mode of action, GUS expression was the result of cre/*lox*-mediated recombination of pBS210, producing the expected excision product pBS210a (Figure 1A).

20

Furthermore, the data shown in Table 1 indicate that the *inlscre* gene encoded as much as 37% of the recombinase activity of the *cre* or *nlscre* genes (Table 1), suggesting that splicing of the intron was occurring in transfected protoplasts. The transient expression data validated the cre/*lox*-mediated recombination mechanism involving pBS210, shown schematically in

25 Figure 1A.

A modified version of plasmid pBS210 was prepared for subsequent use in the *in planta* gene excision experiments described below, in Examples 6-8.

- 45 -

TABLE 1

cre/lox-mediated reconstitution of GUS expression from PBS210

5	ELECTROPORATED PLASMID	β -Glucuronidase, units/25 μ g protein
	pBS210	0
	pBS210 + p35s-cre	133
	pBS210 + p35S-nlscre	141
10	pBS210 + p35S-inlscre	51

Protoplast extracts were prepared and β -Glucuronidase activity was measured by the MUG method. Activities (relative fluorescence units) represent the average of two experiments.

15

EXAMPLE 6**Inducible *cre-lox* mediated *in planta* gene excision**

To demonstrate the principle of *in planta* inducible *cre/lox*-mediated gene excision in *cis*, a
 20 construct was prepared which contained a plant regulatable *inlscre* transcriptional unit adjacent to the *nptII* marker gene. As both genes are within the region of DNA bound by *loxP*, premature expression of *nlscre* in callus culture would lead to excision of the *nptII* gene before the selection of transgenic tissue was completed. To avoid this, the *inlscre* gene was expressed from the *rbcS 1a* promoter which had low activity in callus culture, and high
 25 activity in regenerating or regenerated tissues, organs or organisms. Sequences contained within the 1.7 kb *rbcS 1a* promoter fragment were previously shown to confer light-inducible expression on a heterologous gene in tobacco (Donald and Cashmore, 1990).

30

- 46 -

Preliminary experiments showed that no GUS activity could be detected when a construct containing the *gusA* gene driven by the *rbcS 1a* promoter and polyadenylation signals (*rbcS 1a* 3' end) was introduced into tobacco by *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation of leaf discs and subsequent regeneration in the dark for up to 3 weeks. In contrast, GUS expression
5 was apparent in a similar experiment conducted in parallel, wherein a 35S promoter-driven *gusA-nos3'* construct was introduced into plant cells (data not shown).

Furthermore, as *inlscre* had the least activity of the three *cre* genes tested in the protoplast experiments (Table 1), the inventors considered that use of this gene as source of *inlscre* would
10 provide an even tighter control of *inlscre* expression *in planta*.

The T-DNA region of the plasmid construct pBS229 (Figure 1B), was introduced into tobacco using *Agrobacterium*-mediated plant transformation procedures as described above. Since the activity of the *rbcS 1a* promoter is light-inducible (Donald and Cashmore, 1990), *inlscre*
15 expression was reduced until desired, by regenerating transgenic ntBS229 tissue initially in the dark, in the presence of kanamycin. This procedure avoided premature *nptII* excision. After two weeks, calli were transferred to media lacking kanamycin, and regeneration continued under normal light conditions.

20

EXAMPLE 7

Regeneration of plants free of the *nptII* gene

After three days in the light, small pieces of callus with developing shoots were removed and assayed for GUS expression by staining with X-gluc. A proportion of the tested shoots
25 stained blue (Figure 2), indicating expression of the GUS gene therein. These data suggest that excision of the DNA segment flanked by *loxP* had occurred in the transformed, regenerating shoots, thereby reconstituting the Sc4-GUS transcriptional unit (Figure 1A).

One month after continued regeneration in the light without kanamycin selection, leaves were
30 taken from eighteen ntBS229 plants and stained for GUS activity. Five plants showed GUS

- 47 -

activity in tissues for which Sc4 promoter-driven GUS expression is normal (not shown).

A young leaf and an old leaf were taken from each of the eighteen ntBS229 GUS⁺ plants and from one GUS⁻ plant and assayed for *nptII* activity. All Gus⁺ and Gus⁻ leaves tested had high
5 *nptII* activity levels, with the exception of one leaf from plant ntBS229-4 (Figure 3A).

DNA was also extracted from the leaf tissue for PCR analysis, to determine whether excision had occurred. The rationale of this approach is outlined in Figure 4a.

- 10 Using DNA obtained from ntBS229 plants prior to cre/*lox*-mediated recombination as template, PCR with primer combinations B+C and with D+E was calculated to produce amplification products of 0.72 kb and 1.1 kb in length, respectively (Figure 4a, panel A). In contrast, no amplification products should be synthesised in PCR reactions using ntBS229 DNA isolated from plant material in which cre/*lox*-mediated recombination has occurred.
- 15 This is because cre/*lox*-mediated excision of the *nptII* gene from genomic DNA prevents primer B from hybridising thereto (Figure 4a, panel B).

Using DNA obtained from ntBS229 plants after cre/*lox*-mediated recombination has occurred as a template for PCR, the primer combination A+C was calculated to produce an
20 amplification product of 0.42 kb in length (Figure 4a, panel B). In contrast, the same primer pair was predicted to produce an amplification product of ~4.5 kb in length, using DNA from ntBS229 plants in which no recombination has occurred (Figure 4a, panel A).

As shown in Figure 4b, amplification products of several ntBS229 T₀ leaf DNAs, of 0.72 kb,
25 1.1 kb and 0.42 kb in length, were obtained using the primer combinations B+C, D+E and A+C, respectively. These observations are consistent with the presence of both recombined and unrecombined pBS229 T-DNA constructs in the plant genomes.

In contrast, the ntBS229-4 regenerant which had significantly lower *nptII* activity contained
30 only the excised construct, evident by the amplification of DNA of 0.42 kb in length only

- 48 -

when primers A+C were used and no products when primers B+C or D+E were used (Figure 4b).

Thus 9/10 leaves from five T₀ tobacco plants analysed were both GUS⁺, *nptII*⁺ and had a mixture of recombined and unrecombined pBS229 T-DNA constructs in their genomes. These plants were chimeric.

EXAMPLE 8

Excision of the *nptII* gene from the plant genome of T₀ regenerants

Plants were regenerated from leaf discs of one chimeric GUS⁺*nptII*⁺ T₀ tobacco plant, designated ntBS229-4. Thirteen plants, regenerated from six leaves, were assayed for both the GUS and *nptII* phenotype, and were subjected to PCR analysis of extracted DNA.

The regenerated plants were all GUS⁺ with expression evident in all tissues expected for Sc4 promoter-driven expression (data not shown).

PCR analysis of DNA extracted from these plants using primer combination A+C showed a product of 420 bp in all plants, while with primer combination B+C, a PCR product was seen only with DNA from plant #6, of 0.72 kb in length. The absence of any detectable amplification product obtained using primer pair B+C in 12/13 regenerants indicates that the level of *cre/lox*-mediated excision had increased in the ntBS229-4 regenerants compared to the parent ntBS229-4 plant. Furthermore, the cycle of tissue culture including regeneration employed was successful in reducing the frequency of chimeric plants produced.

NptII activity in 12/13 regenerated plants, was only slightly above background, however plant #6 had *nptII* activity levels characteristic of the chimeric parent ntBS229-4, from which it was derived (Figure 3B). The background *nptII* activity levels in the 12 regenerants is indicative of residual *nptII* enzyme levels produced in cells prior to the excision of the *nptII*

- 49 -

transcriptional unit from the genome.

To verify that *cre/lox*-mediated recombination had occurred in the regenerants, the 420 bp amplification product obtained from one of the regenerants using primers A+C was cloned and five independent clones subjected to DNA sequencing. The data (not shown) indicated that the expected *cre/lox*-mediated recombination event had indeed occurred.

Plants were similarly regenerated from three other *GUS*⁺*nptII*⁺ T₀ tobaccos, ntBS229-8, -17 and -20. In comparison to plant ntBS229-4, where 12/13 regenerants were *GUS*⁺*nptII*⁺, 4/18, 1/18 and 4/18 regenerants from ntBS229-8, -17 and -20 were *GUS*⁺*nptII*⁺, respectively.

In a second experiment involving *in planta cre/lox*-mediated gene excision, the T-DNA regions of plasmids pBS229 (Figure 1B), pBS266 and pBS267 (Figure 5) were separately introduced into tobacco. The procedure used was as described above in Example 6 and 7, except that in this experiment transgenic tissue was regenerated in the light. T₀ tobacco plants were generated for each construct, and seed collected from these plants. Seeds were germinated, and T₁ seedlings analysed for GUS phenotype, *nptII* enzymatic activity and PCR analysis of extracted leaf DNA as described above in Example 7 and 8. The results of this analysis are shown in Table 2. It was found that three out of nine ntBS229 T₁ tobacco lines were *GUS*⁺*nptII*⁺, while with the nine ntBS266 and ntBS267 T₁ lines analysed, all 5 *GUS*⁺ lines in each case were also *nptII*⁺.

TABLE 2
GUS phenotype and *nptII* genotype of T₁ tobacco plants

Source of T-DNA	T ₁ , <i>GUS</i> ⁺ <i>nptII</i> ⁻	T ₁ , <i>GUS</i> ⁺ <i>nptII</i> ⁺	T ₁ , <i>GUS</i> ⁻ <i>nptII</i> ⁺
pBS229	3/9 ^{a,b}	1/9	5/9
pBS266	0/9 ^c	5/9	4/9
pBS267	0/9	5/9	4/9

a: numbers in the table refer to the number of lines with the indicated phenotype and

- 50 -

genotype, expressed as a proportion of the total number of T₁ lines analysed in each instance; the word "line" is used here to indicate lineage with the corresponding T₀ plant.

- b: For each T₁ line, a minimum of 30 plants was scored for GUS phenotype by staining with X-gluc. To determine the NptII phenotype, *nptII* enzymatic assays were performed on at least 20 GUS⁺ T₁ plants for each construct; for each T₁ line, DNA from 2-3 GUS⁺ plants was then extracted and subjected to PCR analysis, to establish the *nptII* genotype.
- 10 c: PCR analysis of extracted DNA was not performed with ntBS266 T₁ tobacco lines.

In a third *in planta* cre/lox-mediated gene excision experiment, the T-DNA region of pBS229 was introduced into *Solanum tuberosum* cultivar Atlantic (potato) by *Agrobacterium*-mediated plant transformation (Peter Waterhouse, unpublished). 34 T₀ plants were regenerated and stained with X-gluc to determine the GUS phenotype. Two plants stained blue with X-gluc, indicating that cre/lox-mediated excision had occurred to produce a transcriptionally active *gusA* cassette (see Figure 1). Plants are regenerated from tissue explants of the GUS⁺ stBS229 plants, and the regenerants characterised for GUS phenotype, *nptII* enzymatic assay and PCR analysis of extracted DNA as described above in Example 7 and 8.

20

EXAMPLE 9

Transformation *in planta* using a hormone gene for selection of transformed tissue.

To demonstrate the principle of *in planta* selection of transformed tissue using a hormone gene, a construct was prepared which contained an *ipt* coding region and *ipt* 3' polyadenylation sequence from the *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* pTiAch5 T-DNA (Heidekamp *et al*, 1983) inserted downstream of an enhanced 35S promoter and TMV 5' untranslated leader region (Goelet *et al*, 1982) to confer strong constitutive *in planta* expression of isopentenyl transferase. In order to conduct *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation of plant

- 51 -

cells, the 35S-TMV5'-*ipt-ipt3'-nos3'* gene from pRDF10072 was inserted into the binary vector pIG121-Hm (Hiei *et al*, 1994) to create pRDF10086 (Figure 6). pRDF10086 and pIG121-Hm were separately introduced into *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* strain AGL1 (Lazo *et al*, 1991). Cultures of AGL1/pRDF10086 and AGL1/pIG121-Hm were grown in the presence of 20 μ M acetosyringone to induce *vir* gene expression, the cells harvested by centrifugation and concentrated 25-fold by resuspension of the cells in a small volume of sterile water. The bacterial suspensions were inoculated into stems of 6-week old tobacco plants (*Nicotiana tabacum* cv. Samsun NN) using a 23G needle attached to a syringe to puncture the stems. Plants were kept in the greenhouse at 23°C daytime temperature for 3 days and then transferred to a 27°C daytime/ 18°C nighttime regime in the greenhouse. Galls appeared on plants 3 weeks after inoculation with AGL1/pRDF10086, after which time the plants were decapitated. No galls appeared on plants inoculated with AGL1/pIG121-Hm. Shoot primordia were visible on the surface of galls 5 weeks after inoculation and continued to develop and grow into shoots up to 10 cm long by 9 weeks after inoculation (Figure 10,11,12). Many of the shoots were white to pale green in colour, had thickened stems and leaves, and showed loss of apical dominance, all typical symptoms of overexpression of cytokinin hormones in plant tissues. Some white or pale green shoots gave rise to leaves or parts of leaves that were (normal) green in colour.

20

EXAMPLE 10

Analysis of tissues arising after *Agrobacterium*-mediated transfer of an *ipt* gene

The T-DNA of pRDF10086 contains not only the *ipt* gene but also a *nptII* gene and a *gusA* gene (Figure 6) driven by *nos* and 35S promoters, respectively, that can be used for detection of transformed plant tissue by virtue of expression of neomycin phosphotransferase (Npt) and β -Glucuronidase (Gus) enzyme activities. Some galls, shoots and leaves that arose on tobacco plants inoculated with AGL1/pRDF10086 were analysed for Npt enzyme activity (McDonnell *et al*, 1987) and Gus activity by histochemical staining (Jefferson *et al*, 1987). Slices of gall tissue contained some Gus-positive zones in predominantly Gus-negative areas (data not

- 52 -

shown). When shoots were analysed for Npt activity, 6/17 were Npt-positive (Figure 9). Three of the Npt⁺ shoots were also Gus-positive. When leaves that were part green and part albino were stained for Gus activity, the albino areas were strongly Gus-positive while the green areas were Gus-negative, indicating inactivation of the *gusA* gene in the green zones, and suggesting that selection was operating against high level Gus and/or Ipt expression in some transformed tissues.

EXAMPLE 11

Description of selection of transformed plant tissue using an excisable hormone gene

Transformed shoots that are overexpressing the *ipt* gene are often phenotypically abnormal (eg see above) and are difficult to root (Smigocki and Owens, 1988). To obtain relatively normal tissues and whole plants from the *ipt*-transformed shoots, it is necessary to either inactivate or remove the *ipt* gene. One way this could be achieved is to use *in planta* inducible cre/lox-mediated gene excision in *cis*, with the *ipt* gene lying within the region of DNA bound by two *lox* sites, along with the *inlscre* gene. The genetic construct would normally contain a gene or genes, within the T-DNA but not within the region excised upon cre activation, for introduction into plant cells.

An example of such a genetic construct, presently under construction, is represented schematically in Figure 8. A binary vector, pRDF10543, has been constructed as shown schematically in Figure 7. This binary vector contains *npt* and *oxy* genes in addition to the *Sc4-lox-lox-intronus-nos3'* cassette from pRDF10501. Two genes are inserted into pRDF10543, namely a 35S-*ipt-ipt3'* gene from pRDF10072 and an *ssu-inlscre-ssu3'* gene from prbcS-inlscre. Both are inserted between the *lox* recombination sites and are therefore be excised upon cre activation. The 35S-*ipt* gene functions in much the same way as demonstrated previously (Example 9) for the selection of transformed plant tissue. Sometime during or after formation of a shoot or other organised tissue resulting from *Agrobacterium*-mediated transfer of the genetic construct, expression of cre activity is induced, resulting in

- 53 -

excision of the genes between the *lox* sites. The excisable cassette of the genetic construct is flanked by an Sc4 promoter on one side and a promoterless *intron gusA-nos3'* gene on the other side, such that *inlscre*-mediated excision of the excisable cassette results in juxtaposition of the Sc4 promoter to the *gus* gene, allowing expression of β -Glucuronidase enzyme.

- 5 Activation of the *gus* gene is therefore an indicator of *cre/lox*-mediated excision. The genetic construct also contains *nptII* and *oxy* genes, conferring neomycin phosphotransferase (Npt) activity and resistance to the herbicide bromoxynil, respectively.

- This genetic construct is introduced into *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*, and the resultant cells
- 10 used to inoculate stems of tobacco plants as described earlier for AGL1/pRDF10086. Shoots and leaves that form from galls that grow at the inoculated sites are analysed for β -Glucuronidase and Npt enzyme activity and for survival after application of the herbicide bromoxynil (Rhône-Poulenc). Presence of either enzyme activity or resistance to bromoxynil indicates transformation of the plant tissues analysed. The presence of β -Glucuronidase
- 15 enzyme activity indicates that excision of the excisable cassette has occurred in the transformed plant tissue. Excision of the *ipt* gene from such tissues results in a relatively normal phenotype of leaves and stems, namely greener leaves and stems with less thickening associated with overexpression of cytokinin hormones, compared to tissues retaining the *ipt* gene. Relatively normal looking, Gus-positive shoots are chosen for molecular analysis to
- 20 demonstrate the presence of a reconstituted Sc4-*gusA-nos3'* gene and to test for the presence and activity of the *nptII* and *oxy* genes. Shoots which show the presence of a reconstituted *gus* gene are allowed to flower and set seed, and progeny plants are analysed for segregation and activity of the *nptII*, *gus* and *oxy* genes. A Mendelian pattern of inheritance of one or more of these genes demonstrates that the chosen shoots were stably transformed by the
- 25 genetic construct with subsequent excision of the *ipt* and *inlscre* genes.

15 EQUIVALENTS

BN8DOCID: <WO 9737012A1 IA>

REFERENCES

1. Abremski *et al* (1983) *Cell* 32, 1301-1311
- 5 2. An *et al.* (1985) *EMBO J.* 4:277-284.
3. Armstrong, C.L., Peterson, W.L., Buchholz, W.G., Bowen, B.A. Sulc, S.L. (1990). *Plant Cell Reports* 9, 335-339.
4. Boevink, P. *et al* (1995) *Virology* 207, 354-361
5. Christou, P., McCabe, D.E., Swain, W.F. (1988). *Plant Physiol* 87, 671-674.
- 10 6. Crossway *et al.* (1986) *Mol. Gen. Genet.* 202,179-185.
7. Dale, E.C., & Ow, D.W. (1991) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 88, 10558-10562
8. de Feyter, R. *et al* (1997) Manuscript in preparation
9. Donald, R.G.K. & Cashmore, A.R. (1990) *EMBO J.* 9, 1717-1726
10. Ellis, J.G. *et al* (1987) *EMBO J.* 6, 11-16
- 15 11. Fromm *et al.* (1985) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. (USA)* 82,5824-5828.
12. Goelet, P. *et al* (1982) *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 79, 5818-5822
13. Golic, K.G. *et al* (1989) *Cell* 59, 499-509
14. Graham, M.W. & Larkin, P.J. (1995) *Transgenic Research* 4, 324-331
15. Haseloff, J. and Gerlach, W.L. (1988). *Nature* 334, 586-594.
- 20 16. Heidekamp, F. *et al* (1983) *Nucl Acids Res.* 11, 6211-6223
17. Herrera-Estrella *et al.* (1983a) *Nature* 303, 209-213.
18. Herrera-Estrella *et al.* (1983b) *EMBO J.* 2, 987-995.
19. Herrera-Estrella *et al.* (1985) *In: Plant Genetic Engineering*, Cambridge University Press, NY, pp 63-93.
- 25 20. Hiei, Y. *et al* (1994) *Plant J.* 6, 271-282
21. Jefferson, R.A. *et al* (1987) *EMBO J.* 6, 3901-3907
22. Kalderon, D. *et al* (1984) *Cell* 39, 499-509
23. Kay, R. *et al* (1987) *Science* 236, 1299-1302
24. Krens, F.A., Molendijk, L., Wullems, G.J. and Schilperoort, R.A. (1982).
 30 *Nature* 296, 72-74.

- 56 -

25. Landsmann, J. *et al* (1986) *Nature* 324, 166-168
26. Landsmann, J. *et al* (1989) *Mol. Gen. Genet.* 214, 68-73
27. Lazo, G.R. *et al* (1991) *Bio/Technology* 9, 963-967
28. Lloyd, A.M. & Davis, R.W. (1994) *Mol. Gen. Genet.* 242, 653-657
- 5 29. Lyznik, L.A. *et al* (1995) *The Plant Journal* 8, 177-186
30. Ma, Q-H *et al* (1997) Specific expression of isopentenyl transferase gene in transgenic tobacco seed controlled by a pea vicilin promoter *Aust. J. Plant Physiol* (submitted for publication)
31. Matzke, M.A. & Matzke A.J.M. (1995) *Plant Physiol.* 107, 679-68
- 10 32. McDonnell, R.E. *et al* (1987) *Plant Mol. Biol. Rep.* 5, 380-386
33. Murashige, T. & Skoog, F. (1962) *Physiol. Plant.* 15, 473-497
34. O'Gorman, S. *et al* (1991) *Science* 251, 1351-1355
35. Pazkowski *et al.* (1984) *EMBO J.* 3, 2717-2722.
36. Russell, S.H. *et al* (1992) *Mol. Gen. Genet.* 234, 49-59
- 15 37. Sanger, F. *et al* (1977) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 74, 5463-5467
38. Sambrook, J. *et al* (1989) *In: Molecular Cloning - A laboratory manual* (second edition), Cold Spring Harbor Lab. press
39. Smigocki, A.C. and Owens, L.D. (1988) *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 85, 5131-5135
40. Stalker, D.M. *et al* (1988) *J. Biol Chem.* 263, 6310-6314
- 20 41. Tabe, L.M. *et al* (1995) *J. Anim. Sci.* 73, 2752-2759
42. Vieira, J. & Messing, J. (1987) *Methods Enzymol.* 153, 3-11

- 57 -

CLAIMS:

1. A genetic construct comprising a first expression cassette which comprises:
 - (i) a recombinase genetic unit which comprises a genetic sequence which encodes
5 a site-specific recombinase placed upstream of a terminator sequence and operably under the control of a first promoter; and
 - (ii) a transgene unit which comprises one or more expressable transgenes as
hereinbefore defined, placed operably under the control of one or more second promoter sequences;
- 10 wherein said recombinase genetic unit and said transgene unit are linked and wherein said first expression cassette is flanked by two recombination loci capable of binding to said site-specific recombinase.
2. The genetic construct according to claim 1 wherein the genetic sequence which
15 encodes the site-specific recombinase is the *cre* gene and the recombination loci are *lox* sites or functionally-equivalent homologues, analogues or derivatives thereof.
3. The genetic construct according to claim 1 wherein the genetic sequence which
encodes the site-specific recombinase is the *flp* gene and the recombination loci are *frt* sites
20 or functionally-equivalent homologues, analogues or derivatives thereof.
4. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 3 wherein the transgene encodes a ribozyme molecule.
- 25 5. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 3 wherein the transgene encodes an antisense molecule.
6. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 3 wherein the transgene encodes a co-suppression molecule.

30

- 58 -

7. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 3 wherein the transgene is a structural gene.

8. The genetic construct according to claim 7 wherein the structural gene sequence is
5 a selectable marker gene, a reporter gene, a hormone gene, hormone-encoding gene, hormone-biosynthesis gene or a genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels.

9. The genetic construct according to claim 8 wherein the selectable marker gene is
10 selected from the list comprising the antibiotic resistance genes which confer resistance to ampicillin, Claforan, gentamycin, G-418, hygromycin, kanamycin, neomycin, spectinomycin, tetracycline or a derivative or related compound thereto.

10. The genetic construct according to claim 8 wherein the selectable marker gene is
15 selected from the list of herbicide-resistance genes which encode polypeptides which confer resistance to any one or more of atrazine, Basta, Bialophos, bromoxynil, Buctril, 2,4-D, glyphosate, phosphinothricin, sulphonylurea, or a derivative or related compound thereto.

11. The genetic construct according to claim 8 wherein the reporter gene is selected from
20 the list comprising chloramphenicol acetyltransferase, β -glucuronidase, luciferase, and green fluorescent protein genes.

12. The genetic construct according to claim 8 wherein the structural gene encodes a polypeptide or enzyme which catalyses at least one step leading to the synthesis of a cytokinin
25 or auxin or other plant growth regulator, or regulates the production or metabolism of said cytokinin, auxin or other plant growth regulator.

13. The genetic construct according to claim 12 wherein the structural gene is *ipt*.

30 14. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 13, wherein the genetic

- 59 -

construct further comprises a modification to reduce or prevent recombinase expression in a prokaryote cell.

15. The genetic construct according to claim 14 wherein the modification is the insertion
5 of an intron sequence to disrupt expression of the recombinase genetic unit absent removal of said intron sequence.

16. The genetic construct according to claim 14 wherein the modification is the insertion of an intron sequence in the coding region of the recombinase gene.

10

17. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 16 wherein the first and second promoters are capable of conferring expression of the structural gene and site-specific recombinase gene in a eukaryote cell.

15 18. The genetic construct according to claim 17 wherein the eukaryote is a plant.

19. The genetic construct according to claim 18 wherein the plant is selected from the list comprising stolon-bearing or tuber-bearing plants such as potatoes, sweet potatoes, jerusalem artichoke, taro or yams, fibre or wood tree crops such as *Eucalyptus ssp.* or *Pinus ssp.*,
20 aspen, ornamental plants such as gerberas, chrysanthemum, orchids, lilies, roses, fuschias, azaleas carnations, camellias or gardenias, citrus crops such as oranges, lemons, grapefruit, tangerines or limes, fruit trees such as apples or pears, berry fruits such as strawberry, raspberry, loganberry or blackberry, tropical crops such as sugarcane, tobacco, bananas, plantain or pineapples or asparagus.

25

20. The genetic construct according to claim 18 wherein the plant is a solanaceous plant.

21. The genetic construct according to claim 20 wherein the plant is tobacco or potato.

30 22. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 17 wherein the first and/or

- 60 -

second promoter is selected from the list comprising constitutive promoters, seed-specific promoters, floral-specific promoters, anther-specific promoters, tapetum-specific promoters, root-specific promoters, leaf-specific promoters, stem-specific promoters, meristem-specific promoters, light-inducible promoters, metal-inducible promoters, heat-shock promoters,
5 wound-inducible and stress-inducible promoters.

23. The genetic construct according to claim 22 wherein the first and/or second promoters are selected from the list comprising CaMV 35S, *NOS*, *OCS*, *Sc1*, *Sc4* and *rbcS*, amongst others.

10

24. The genetic construct according to claims 22 or 23 wherein the first promoter is an inducible promoter.

25. The genetic construct according to claim 24 wherein the inducible promoter is the *rbcS*
15 promoter.

26. The genetic construct according to claim 25 wherein the first promoter is the *Arabidopsis thaliana rbcS 1a* promoter.

20 27. The genetic construct according to claim 23 wherein the first promoter is the CaMV 35S promoter.

28. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 23 to 27 wherein the second promoter is the *Sc4* promoter.

25

29. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 28 wherein the first promoter switches on expression of the site-specific recombinase following the commencement of expression of the structural gene sequence.

30 30. The genetic construct according to claim 29 wherein the first promoter is the

- 61 -

Arabidopsis thaliana rbcS 1a promoter and the second promoter is the CaMV 35S promoter or the Sc4 promoter.

31. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 30 wherein the recombinase
5 genetic unit further comprises a nucleotide sequence which encodes a nuclear localisation signal fused in-frame to the coding region of the recombinase gene.

32. The genetic construct according to claim 31 wherein the nuclear localisation signal is the SV40 T-antigen type nuclear localisation signal.

10

33. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 32 wherein the first expression cassette flanked by recombination loci is inserted into a second expression cassette such that excision of the first expression cassette from the second expression cassette alters expression of the second expression cassette.

15

34. The genetic construct according to claim 33 wherein the second expression cassette comprises one or more expressable transgenes selected from the list comprising structural genes, ribozymes, antisense molecules or co-suppression molecules and wherein each of said transgenes is placed operably under the control of a promoter sequence.

20

35. The genetic construct according to claim 34 wherein the transgene of the second expression cassette is a structural gene.

36. The genetic construct according to claim 35 wherein the structural gene is a reporter
25 gene.

37. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 33 to 36 wherein the transgene of the second expression cassette is expressed following excision of the first expression cassette.

30

- 62 -

38. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 32 further comprising an expressable transgene operably connected to a promoter sequence wherein said expressable transgene is juxtaposed to the outside of the region flanked by the recombination loci and separated from the adjacent recombination loci by a spacer region of at least 2 nucleotides in length.

39. The genetic construct according to claim 38 wherein the expressible gene encodes a functional enzyme, polypeptide, ribozyme, antisense, co-suppression molecule or other RNA molecule.

10

40. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 39 further comprising one or more left border and/or right border sequences or other T-DNA sequences to facilitate its *in vivo* insertion into plant chromosomal DNA.

15 41. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 40 when used to transform a cell.

42. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 40 when used to delete, excise or otherwise remove a transgene from a transformed cell.

20

43. A method of removing a transgene from a cell transformed with the genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 40, said method comprising expressing the recombinase genetic unit of said genetic construct for a time and under conditions sufficient for a site-specific recombinase to be expressed and at least excise the first expression cassette of said genetic construct.

25

44. A method of transiently expressing a transgene in a stably transformed cell, said method comprising:

(i) stably transforming said cell with the genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 40;

30

- 63 -

- (ii) expressing the transgene of the transgene unit in said stably transformed cell; and
 - (iii) expressing the recombinase genetic unit of said genetic construct for a time and under conditions sufficient for a site-specific recombinase to be expressed and at least
- 5 excise the first expression cassette of said genetic construct.

45. The method according to claims 43 or 44 wherein the transgene is selected from the list comprising structural genes, ribozymes, antisense molecule and co-suppression molecules.

10 46. The method according to claim 45 wherein the expressible transgene is a structural gene selected from the list comprising selectable marker gene, reporter gene, hormone gene, hormone-encoding gene, hormone biosynthesis gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels.

15 47. A method of inducing, suppressing or otherwise altering the expression of a transgene in a cell transformed with the genetic construct according to claim 33, said method comprising expressing the recombinase genetic unit of said genetic construct for a time and under conditions sufficient for a site-specific recombinase to be expressed and at least excise the first expression cassette of said genetic construct.

20

48. A method of producing a transformed cell comprising the steps of:

- (i) transforming a cell with the genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 40; and
 - (ii) expressing the recombinase genetic unit for a time and under conditions
- 25 sufficient for expression of the site-specific recombinase encoded by said recombinase genetic unit to occur and result in excision of the transgene of the first expression cassette of said genetic construct or a fragment thereof sufficient to disrupt expression of said transgene.

30 49. The method according to claim 48 wherein the transgene of the first expression

- 64 -

cassette comprises a selectable marker gene and the step of expressing the recombinase genetic unit results in excision of said selectable marker gene or a fragment thereof sufficient to prevent its expression.

- 5 50. The method according to claim 49 wherein the selectable marker gene is selected from the list comprising the antibiotic resistance genes which confer resistance to ampicillin, Claforan, gentamycin, G-418, hygromycin, kanamycin, neomycin, spectinomycin, tetracycline or a derivative or related compound thereto.
- 10 51. The method according to claim 40 wherein the selectable marker gene is selected from the list of herbicide-resistance genes which encode polypeptides which confer resistance to any one or more of atrazine, Basta, Bialophos, bromoxynil, Buctril, 2,4-D, glyphosate, phosphinothricin, sulphonylurea, or a derivative or related compound thereto.
- 15 52. A method of producing a transformed plant cell, said method comprising the steps of:
- (i) transforming said cell with the genetic construct according to any one of claims 12 to 40, wherein the structural gene of the first expression cassette is a hormone gene, hormone-encoding gene, hormone-biosynthesis gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels;
 - 20 (ii) expressing said structural gene in said transformed cell for a time and under conditions sufficient for said cell to differentiate into the progenitor cells of said organ;
 - (iii) expressing the recombinase genetic unit of the genetic construct for a time and under conditions sufficient for expression of the site-specific recombinase encoded by
 - 25 said recombinase genetic unit to occur, thereby leading to excision of the structural gene of the first expression cassette or a fragment thereof sufficient to disrupt expression of the structural gene.
53. The method according to claim 52 comprising the additional step of growing the
- 30 differentiated progenitor cell into an organ or whole plant.

- 65 -

54. The method according to claim 52 or 53 wherein the cell which is transformed in step (i) is derived from a plant cell line, suspension culture of a plant cell line, tissue culture of a plant cell, or callus.
- 5 55. The method according to claim 52 or 53 wherein the cell which is transformed in step (i) is derived from a tissue explant selected from the list comprising leaf, stem, root, or seed, amongst others.
56. The method according to claim 52 or 53 wherein the transformation step (i) is carried
10 out *in situ* on a whole plant.
57. The method according to any one of claims 52 to 56 wherein the hormone gene, hormone-encoding gene, hormone-biosynthesis gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels produces a cytokinin or regulates the
15 production or metabolism of a cytokinin when expressed in the plant cell, sufficient to result in adventitious shoot formation.
58. The method according to claim 57 wherein the hormone gene, hormone-encoding gene, hormone-biosynthesis gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable
20 of regulating hormone levels is *ipt* or a homologue, analogue or derivative thereof.
59. The method according to any one of claims 52 to 56 wherein the hormone gene, hormone-encoding gene, hormone-biosynthesis gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels produces an auxin or regulates the
25 production or metabolism of an auxin when expressed in the plant cell, sufficient to result in adventitious root formation.
60. The method according to any one of claims 52 to 56 wherein the hormone gene, hormone-encoding gene, hormone-biosynthesis gene or genetic sequence which encodes a
30 polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels produces a gibberellin or regulates the

- 66 -

production or metabolism of an gibberellin when expressed in the plant cell, sufficient to result in organogenesis.

61. A method of introducing multiple genes into a cell using a single selectable marker
5 gene, said method comprising the steps of:

(i) transforming said cell with a genetic construct, according to any one of claims
33 to 40 wherein transgene of the first expression cassette is a selectable marke gene;

(ii) expressing the recombinase gene contained in said genetic construct in said cell
or the progeny of said cell; and

10 (iii) transforming the cell obtained in step (ii) with a second genetic construct as
hereinbefore described, wherein the structural gene of said genetic construct is a
selectable marker gene which is substantially the same as the selectable marker gene
use in step (i) or a homologue, analogue or a derivative thereof.

15 62. The method according to claim 61 comprising the further step of repeating step (ii)
of said method.

63. The method according to claim 62 further comprising repeating the steps defined by
claim 61 at least once.

20

64. A cell or organism transformed with the genetic construct according to any one of
claims 1 to 40 or a derivative thereof produced by the removal of the first expression cassette
of said genetic construct therefrom.

25 65. The cell or organism according to claim 64 further characterised as a prokaryotic cell.

66. The cell or organism according to claim 64 further characterised as a eukaryotic cell
or organism.

30 67. The cell or organism according to claim 64 wherein the eukaryote cell is a plant cell

- 67 -

or organism.

68. A cell or organism which comprises a footprint of at least about 30 nucleotides in length derived from the genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 40, wherein said
5 footprint at least comprises one the the recombination loci of said genetic construct.

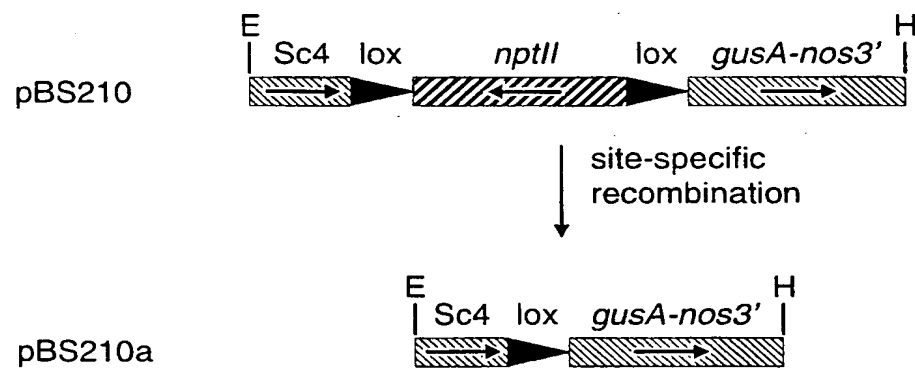
69. The cell or organism according to claim 68 wherein the plant is selected from the list comprising stolon-bearing or tuber-bearing plants such as potatoes, sweet potatoes, jerusalem artichoke, taro or yams, fibre or wood tree crops such as *Eucalyptus ssp.* or *Pinus ssp.*,
10 aspen, ornamental plants such as gerberas, chrysanthemum, orchids, lilies, roses, fuschias, azaleas carnations, camellias or gardenias, citrus crops such as oranges, lemons, grapefruit, tangerines or limes, fruit tress such as apples or pears, berry fruits such as strawberry, raspberry, loganberry or blackberry, tropical crops such as sugarcane, tobacco, bananas, plantain or pineapples or asparagus, amongst others.

15

70. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 40 when used to ablate a cell or tissue *in planta*.

1/15

A



B

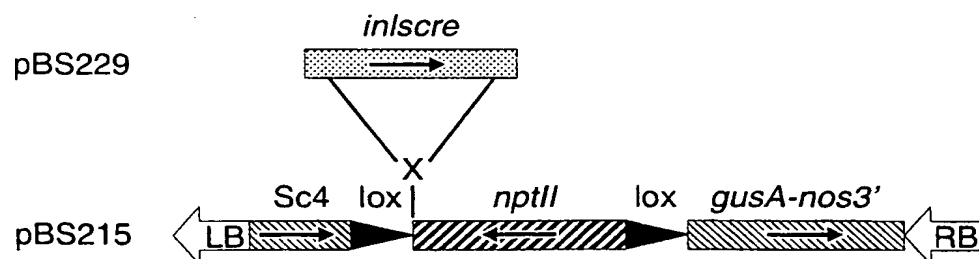


FIGURE 1

2/15

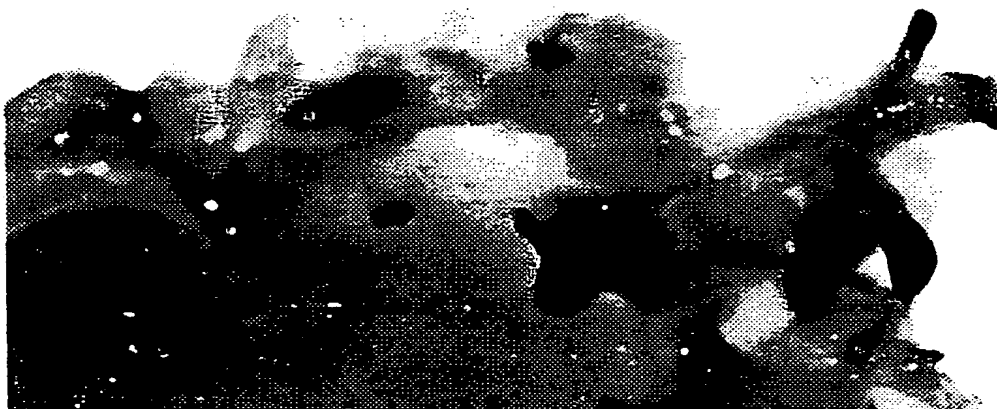


FIGURE 2

3/15

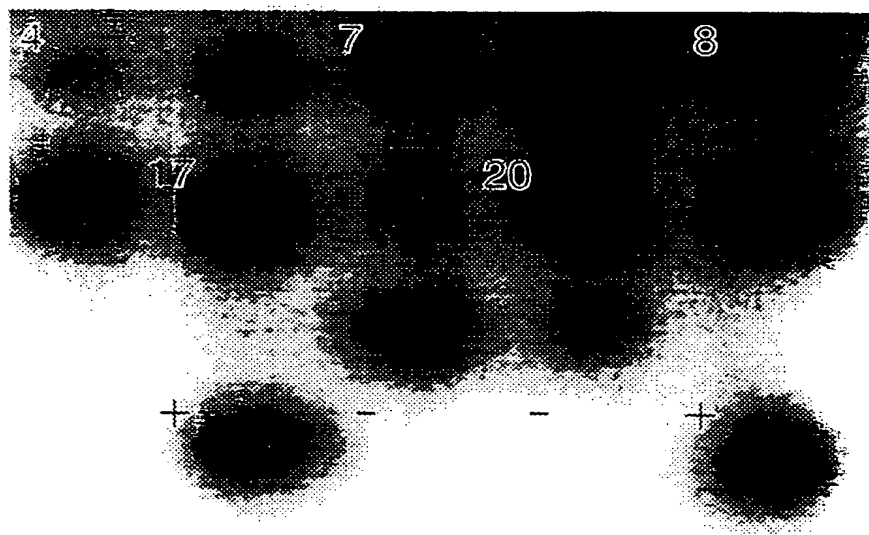


FIGURE 3A

4/15

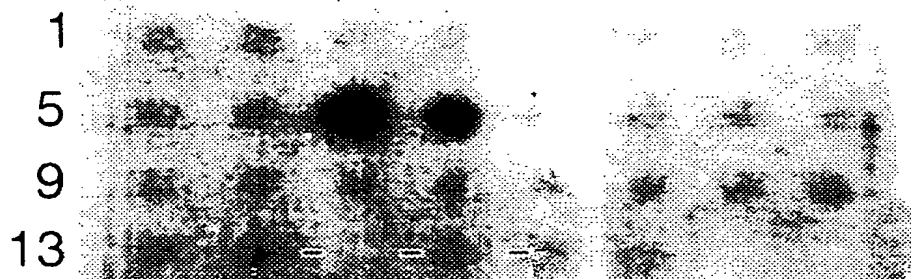


FIGURE 3B

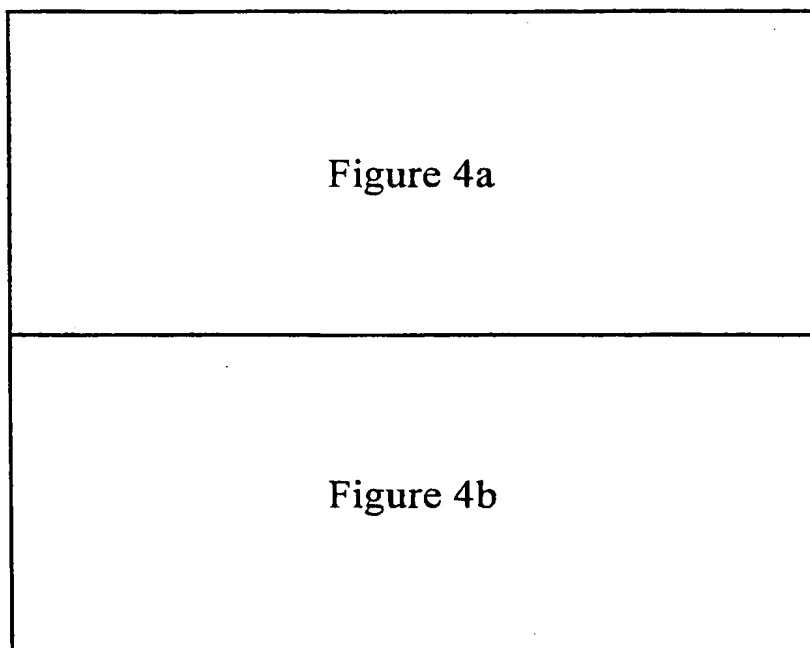


FIGURE 4

6/15

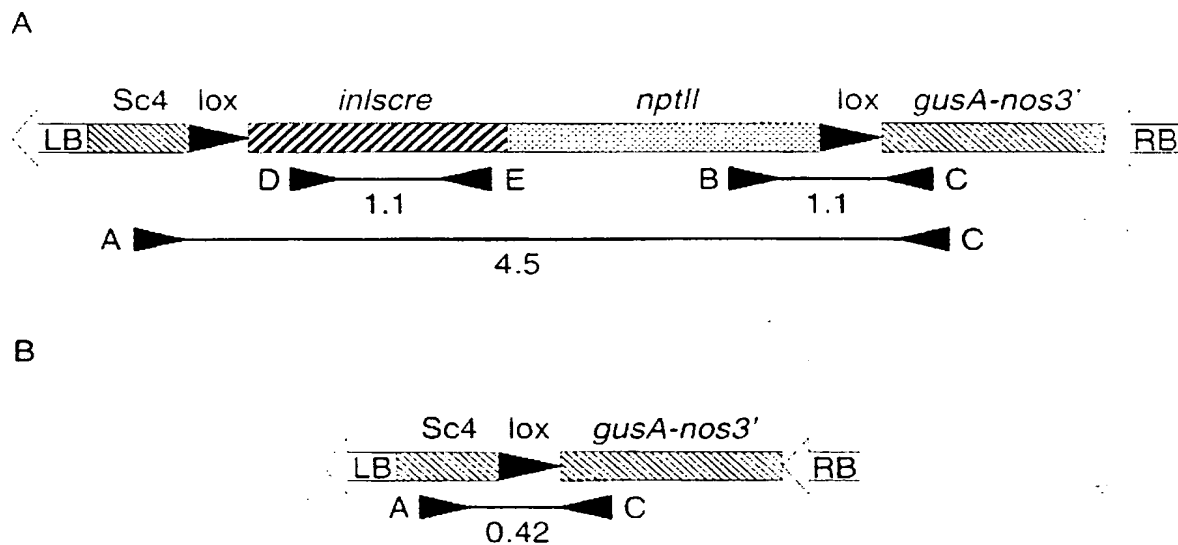


FIGURE 4a

7/15

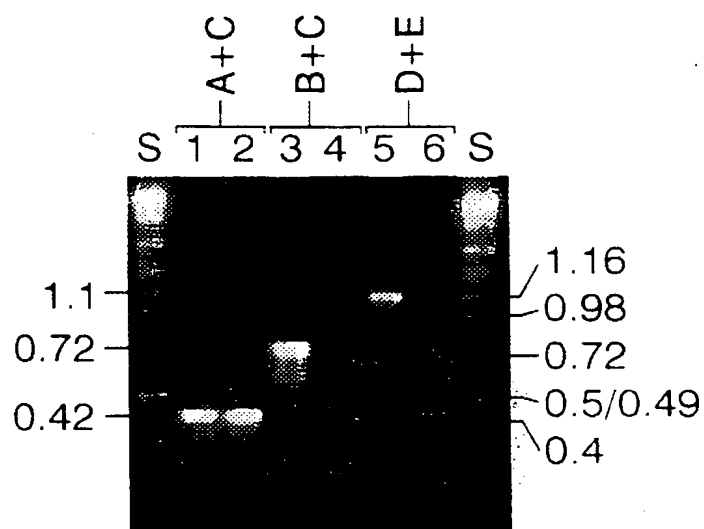


FIGURE 4b

(pBS266) pAp1-*inlscre*
(pBS267) pVic-*inlscre*

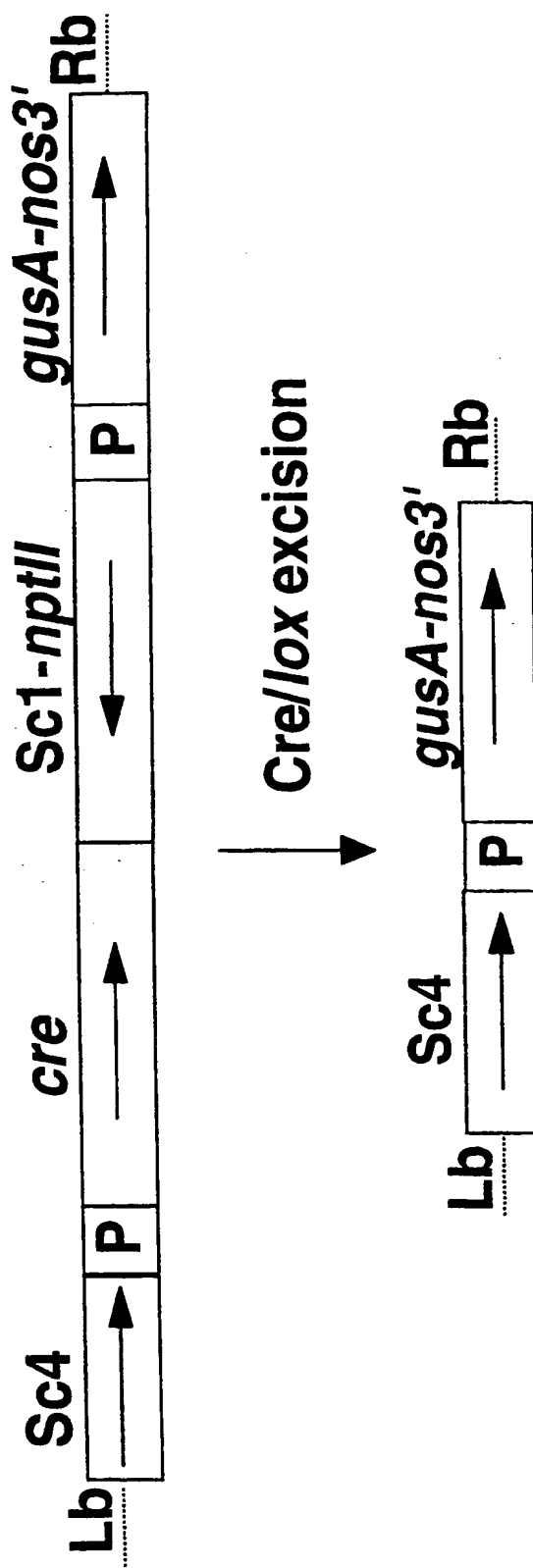


FIGURE 5

9/15

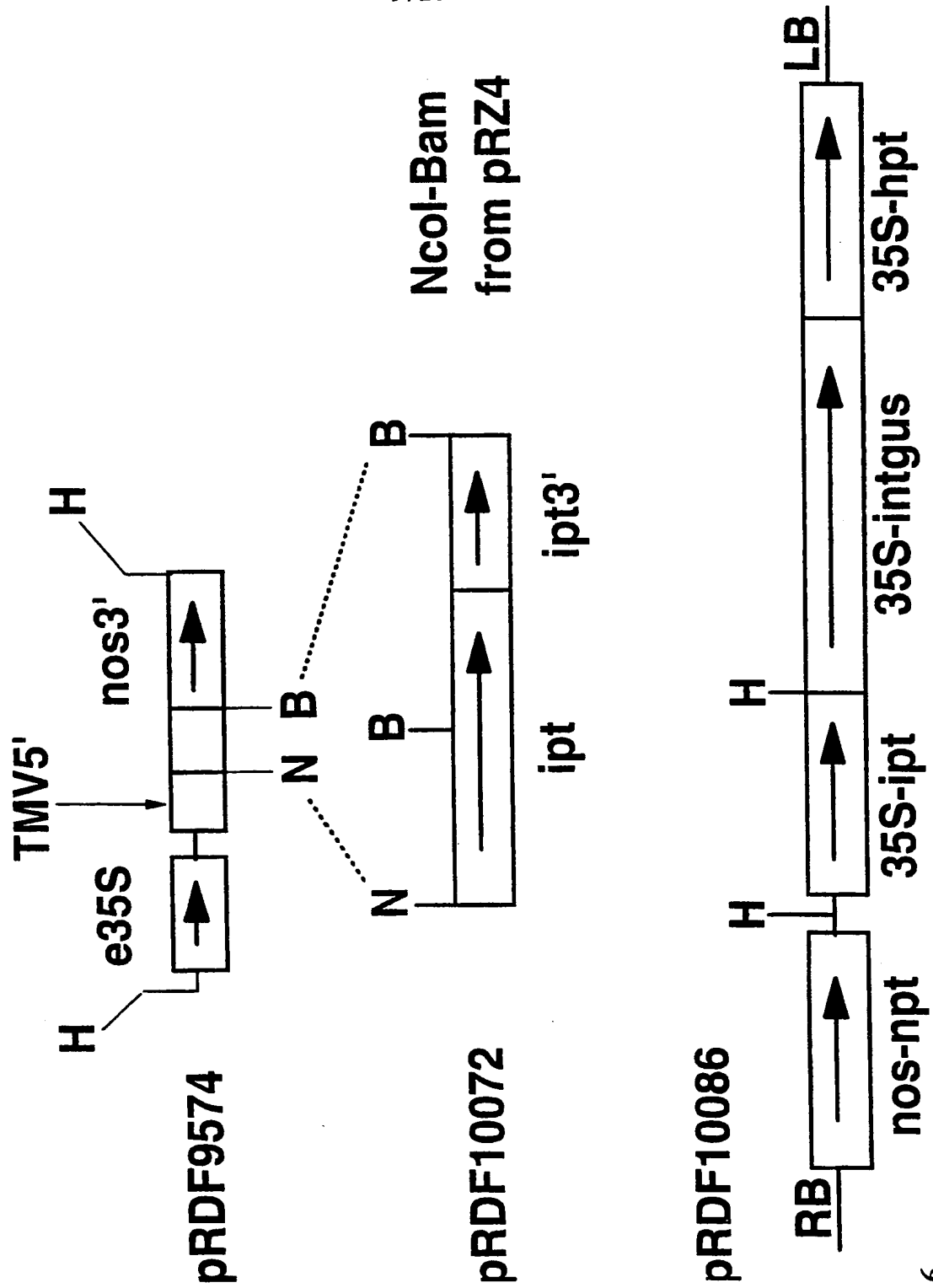


FIGURE 6

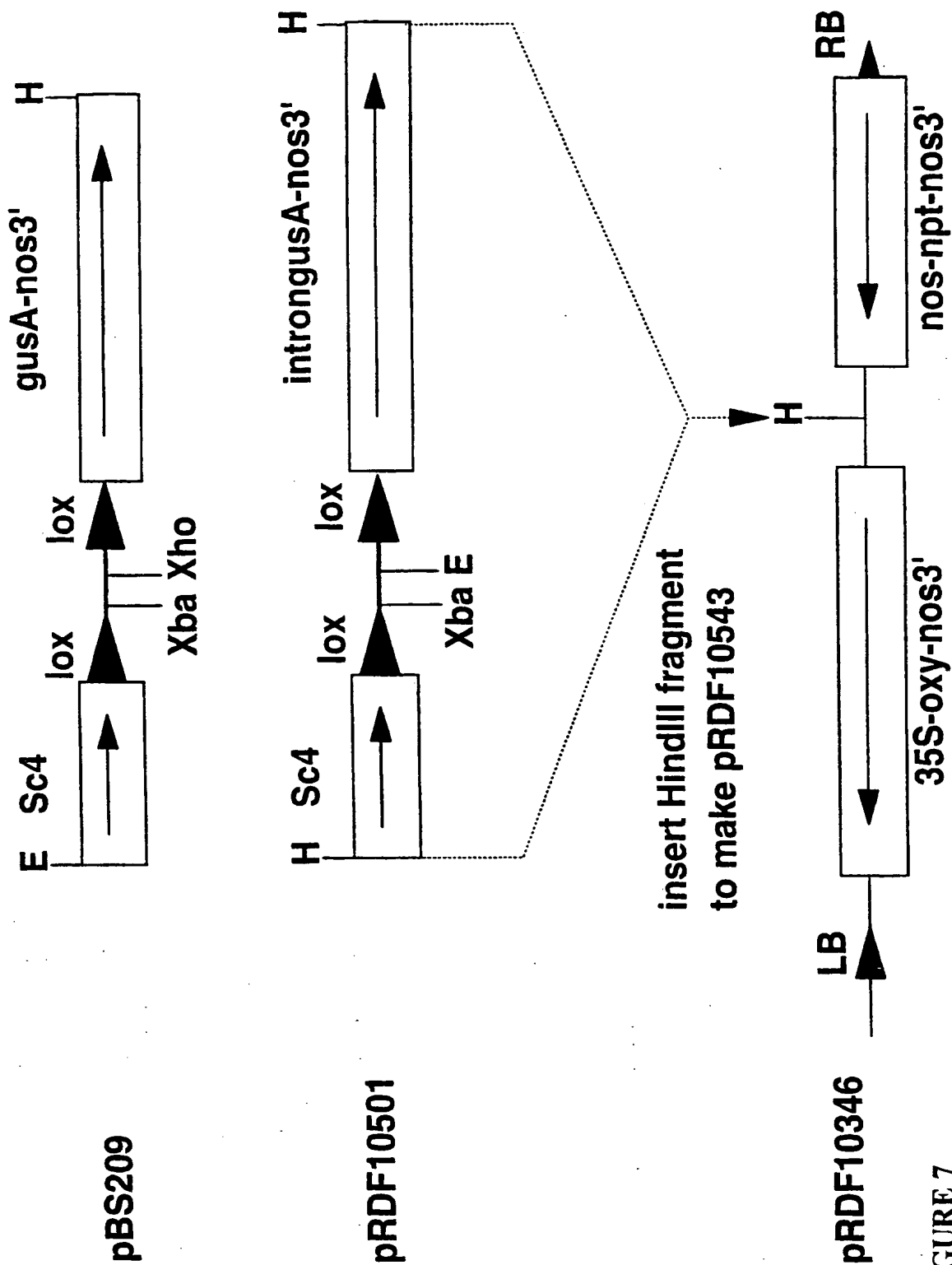


FIGURE 7

11/15

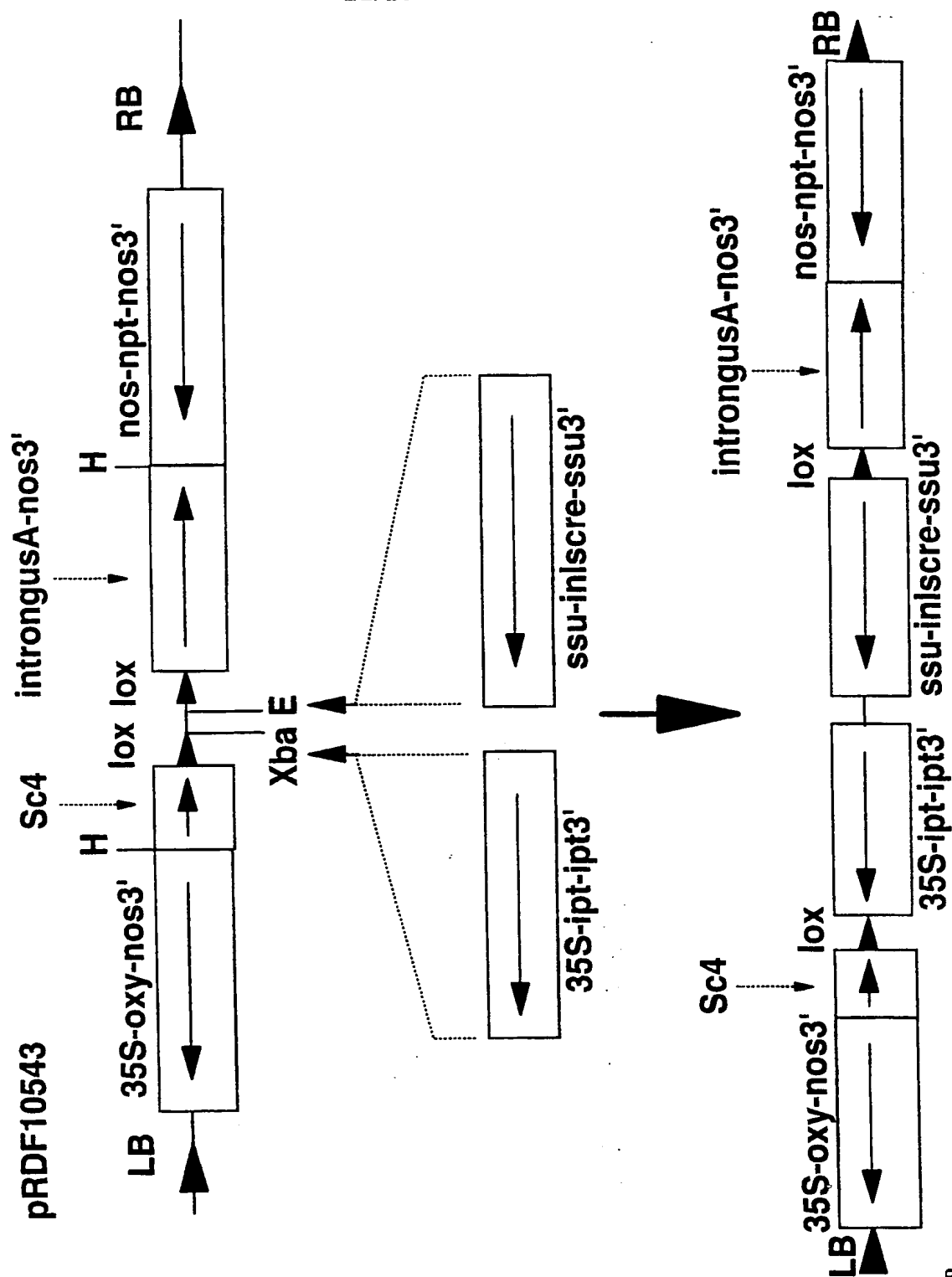
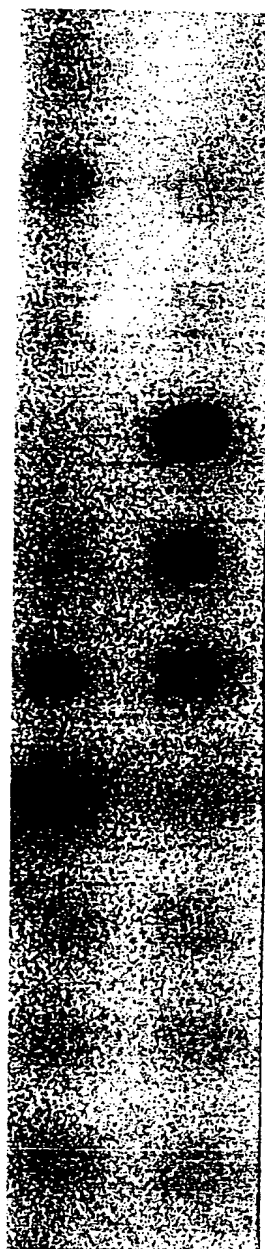


FIGURE 8

12/15



Key

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	C	C	

FIGURE 9

13/15



FIGURE 10

14/15



FIGURE 11

15/15



FIGURE 12

INDICATIONS RELATING TO A DEPOSITED MICROORGANISM

(PCT Rule 13bis)

<p>A. The indications made below relate to the microorganism referred to in the description on page <u>41</u> line <u>1 to 13</u></p>	
<p>B. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p>	
<p>Name of depositary institution AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT ANALYTICAL LABORATORIES</p>	
<p>Address of depositary institution (including postal code and country) P.O. Box 385 Pymble NSW 2073 AUSTRALIA</p>	
<p>Date of deposit 27 MARCH 1997 (27/03/97)</p>	<p>Accession Number NM97/04988</p>
<p>C. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) This information is continued on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/></p>	
<p>Plasmid pRDF 10543</p>	
<p>D. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE (if the indications are not for all designated States)</p>	
<p>E. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable)</p>	
<p>The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later (specify the general nature of the indications e.g. "Accession Number of Deposit")</p>	

For receiving Office use only

☐ This sheet was received with the international application

Authorized officer

For International Bureau use only

☒ This sheet was received by the International Bureau on:
29 APR 1997

Authorized officer
[Signature]

INDICATIONS RELATING TO A DEPOSITED MICROORGANISM

(PCT Rule 13bis)

A. The indications made below relate to the microorganism referred to in the description on page <u>40</u> line <u>1 to 11</u>	
B. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Name of depositary institution AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT ANALYTICAL LABORATORIES	
Address of depositary institution (including postal code and country) P.O. Box 385 Pymble NSW 2073 AUSTRALIA	
Date of deposit 27 MARCH 1997 (27/03/97)	Accession Number NM97/04989
C. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) This information is continued on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/>	
Plasmid pRDF 10086	
D. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE (if the indications are not for all designated States)	
E. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable)	
The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later (specify the general nature of the indications e.g., "Accession Number of Deposit")	

For receiving Office use only
<input type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received with the international application
Authorized officer

For International Bureau use only
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received by the International Bureau on: 29 APR 1997
Authorized officer <i>Pymble</i>

INDICATIONS RELATING TO A DEPOSITED MICROORGANISM

(PCT Rule 13bis)

A. The indications made below relate to the microorganism referred to in the description on page <u>40</u> line <u>1 to 13</u>	
B. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT	
Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Name of depositary institution AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT ANALYTICAL LABORATORIES	
Address of depositary institution (including postal code and country) P.O. Box 385 Pymble NSW 2073 AUSTRALIA	
Date of deposit 27 MARCH 1997 (27/03/97)	Accession Number NM97/04990
C. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable)	
This information is continued on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/>	
Plasmid pRDF 10072	
D. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE (if the indications are not for all designated States)	
E. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable)	
The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later (specify the general nature of the indications e.g., "Accession Number of Deposit")	

For receiving Office use only
<input type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received with the international application
Authorized officer

For International Bureau use only
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received by the International Bureau on: 29 APR 1997
Authorized officer <i>B. Morav</i>

INDICATIONS RELATING TO A DEPOSITED MICROORGANISM

(PCT Rule 13bis)

A. The indications made below relate to the microorganism referred to in the description on page <u>35</u> line <u>2 to 4</u>	
B. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Name of depositary institution <p style="text-align: center;">AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT ANALYTICAL LABORATORIES</p>	
Address of depositary institution (including postal code and country) <p style="text-align: center;">P.O. Box 385 Pymble NSW 2073 AUSTRALIA</p>	
Date of deposit <p style="text-align: center;">27 MARCH 1997 (27/03/97)</p>	Accession Number <p style="text-align: center;">NM97/04991</p>
C. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) This information is continued on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/>	
Plasmid pRDF 9574	
D. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE (if the indications are not for all designated States)	
E. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable)	
The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later (specify the general nature of the indications e.g., "Accession Number of Deposit")	

For receiving Office use only	
<input type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received with the international application	
Authorized officer	

For International Bureau use only	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received by the International Bureau on: <p style="text-align: center;">29 APR 1997</p>	
Authorized officer <p style="text-align: center;"><i>[Signature]</i></p>	

INDICATIONS RELATING TO A DEPOSITED MICROORGANISM

(PCT Rule 13bis)

A. The indications made below relate to the microorganism referred to in the description on page <u>38</u> line <u>17</u>	
B. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Name of depositary institution AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT ANALYTICAL LABORATORIES	
Address of depositary institution (including postal code and country) P.O. Box 385 Pymble NSW 2073 AUSTRALIA	
Date of deposit 27 MARCH 1997 (27/03/97)	Accession Number NM97/04992
C. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) This information is continued on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/>	
Plasmid p35S-CRE	
D. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE (if the indications are not for all designated States)	
E. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later (specify the general nature of the indications e.g., "Accession Number of Deposit")	

For receiving Office use only	
<input type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received with the international application	
Authorized officer	

For International Bureau use only	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received by the International Bureau on:	29 APR 1997
Authorized officer <i>Pmo</i>	

INDICATIONS RELATING TO A DEPOSITED MICROORGANISM

(PCT Rule 13bis)


A. The indications made below relate to the microorganism referred to in the description on page <u>38</u> line <u>17</u>	
B. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Name of depositary institution AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT ANALYTICAL LABORATORIES	
Address of depositary institution (including postal code and country) P.O. Box 385 Pymble NSW 2073 AUSTRALIA	
Date of deposit 27 MARCH 1997 (27/03/97)	Accession Number NM97/04993
C. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) This information is continued on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/>	
Plasmid p35S-NLSCRE	
D. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE (if the indications are not for all designated States)	
E. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable)	
The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later (specify the general nature of the indications e.g., "Accession Number of Deposit")	

For receiving Office use only
<input type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received with the international application
Authorized officer

For International Bureau use only
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received by the International Bureau on: 29 APR 1997
Authorized officer <i>Pmo</i>

INDICATIONS RELATING TO A DEPOSITED MICROORGANISM


(PCT Rule 13bis)

A. The indications made below relate to the microorganism referred to in the description on page <u>38</u> line <u>17 - 18</u>	
B. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Name of depositary institution AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT ANALYTICAL LABORATORIES	
Address of depositary institution (including postal code and country) P.O. Box 385 Pymble NSW 2073 AUSTRALIA	
Date of deposit 27 MARCH 1997 (27/03/97)	Accession Number NM97/04994
C. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) This information is continued on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/>	
Plasmid p35S - inlscre	
D. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE (if the indications are not for all designated States)	
E. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later (specify the general nature of the indications e.g., "Accession Number of Deposit")	
For receiving Office use only <input type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received with the international application Authorized officer	For International Bureau use only <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received by the International Bureau on: 29 APR 1997 Authorized officer 

INDICATIONS RELATING TO A DEPOSITED MICROORGANISM

(PCT Rule 13bis)

A. The indications made below relate to the microorganism referred to in the description on page <u>33</u> line <u>12 - 15</u>	
B. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Name of depositary institution AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT ANALYTICAL LABORATORIES	
Address of depositary institution (including postal code and country) P.O. Box 385 Pymble NSW 2073 AUSTRALIA	
Date of deposit 27 MARCH 1997 (27/03/97)	Accession Number NM97/04995
C. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) This information is continued on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/>	
Plasmid pBS210	
D. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE (if the indications are not for all designated States)	
E. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable)	
The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later (specify the general nature of the indications e.g., "Accession Number of Deposit")	

<div style="text-align: center; border-top: 1px solid black; border-bottom: 1px solid black;">For receiving Office use only</div> <div style="padding: 5px;"><input type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received with the international application</div> <div style="padding: 5px;">Authorized officer</div>	<div style="text-align: center; border-top: 1px solid black; border-bottom: 1px solid black;">For International Bureau use only</div> <div style="padding: 5px;"><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received by the International Bureau on: 29 APR 1997</div> <div style="padding: 5px;">Authorized officer </div>
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

INDICATIONS RELATING TO A DEPOSITED MICROORGANISM

(PCT Rule 13bis)

A. The indications made below relate to the microorganism referred to in the description on page <u>33</u> line <u>19 - 21</u>	
B. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Name of depositary institution <p style="text-align: center;">AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT ANALYTICAL LABORATORIES</p>	
Address of depositary institution (including postal code and country) <p style="text-align: center;">P.O. Box 385 Pymble NSW 2073 AUSTRALIA</p>	
Date of deposit <p style="text-align: center;">27 MARCH 1997 (27/03/97)</p>	Accession Number <p style="text-align: center;">NM97/04996</p>
C. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) This information is continued on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/>	
Plasmid pBS229	
D. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE (if the indications are not for all designated States)	
E. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable)	
The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later (specify the general nature of the indications e.g., "Accession Number of Deposit")	

For receiving Office use only	
<input type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received with the international application	
Authorized officer	

For International Bureau use only	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received by the International Bureau on:	
29 APR 1997	
Authorized officer 	

INDICATIONS RELATING TO A DEPOSITED MICROORGANISM

(PCT Rule 13bis)

<p>A. The indications made below relate to the microorganism referred to in the description on page <u>39</u> line <u>1 - 12</u></p>	
<p>B. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p>	
<p>Name of depositary institution</p> <p style="text-align: center;">AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT ANALYTICAL LABORATORIES</p>	
<p>Address of depositary institution (including postal code and country)</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P.O. Box 385 Pymble NSW 2073 AUSTRALIA</p>	
<p>Date of deposit</p> <p style="text-align: center;">27 MARCH 1997 (27/03/97)</p>	<p>Accession Number</p> <p style="text-align: center;">NM97/04997</p>
<p>C. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) This information is continued on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/></p>	
<p>BS 210 cells (<u>E. coli</u> transformed with plasmid pBS210)</p>	
<p>D. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE (if the indications are not for all designated States)</p>	
<p>E. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable)</p>	
<p>The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later (specify the general nature of the indications e.g., "Accession Number of Deposit")</p>	

For receiving Office use only	
<p><input type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received with the international application</p>	
<p>Authorized officer</p>	


For International Bureau use only	
<p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received by the International Bureau on:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">29 APR 1997</p>	
<p>Authorized officer</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><i>[Signature]</i></p>	

INDICATIONS RELATING TO A DEPOSITED MICROORGANISM

(PCT Rule 13bis)

A. The indications made below relate to the microorganism referred to in the description on page <u>39</u> line <u>15-28</u>	
B. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Name of depositary institution AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT ANALYTICAL LABORATORIES	
Address of depositary institution (including postal code and country) P.O. Box 385 Pymble NSW 2073 AUSTRALIA	
Date of deposit 27 MARCH 1997 (27/03/97)	Accession Number NM97/04998
C. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) This information is continued on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/>	
BS 229 cells (<u>E.coli</u> transformed with plasmid pBS 229)	
D. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE (if the indications are not for all designated States)	
E. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable)	
The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later (specify the general nature of the indications e.g., "Accession Number of Deposit")	

For receiving Office use only
<input type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received with the international application
Authorized officer

For International Bureau use only
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received by the International Bureau on: 29 APR 1997
Authorized officer 

INDICATIONS RELATING TO A DEPOSITED MICROORGANISM

(PCT Rule 13bis)

A. The indications made below relate to the microorganism referred to in the description on page <u>34</u> line <u>21 - 30</u>	
B. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Name of depositary institution AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT ANALYTICAL LABORATORIES	
Address of depositary institution (including postal code and country) P.O. Box 385 Pymble NSW 2073 AUSTRALIA	
Date of deposit 27 MARCH 1997 (27/03/97)	Accession Number NM97/04999
C. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) This information is continued on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/>	
Plasmid pBS266	
D. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE (if the indications are not for all designated States)	
E. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable)	
The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later (specify the general nature of the indications e.g., "Accession Number of Deposit")	

For receiving Office use only

<input type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received with the international application
Authorized officer

For International Bureau use only

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received by the International Bureau on:
29 APR 1997
Authorized officer <i>Mro</i>

INDICATIONS RELATING TO A DEPOSITED MICROORGANISM

(PCT Rule 13bis)

A. The indications made below relate to the microorganism referred to in the description on page <u>34</u> line <u>21 - 30</u>	
B. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/>	
Name of depositary institution AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT ANALYTICAL LABORATORIES	
Address of depositary institution (including postal code and country) P.O. Box 385 Pymble NSW 2073 AUSTRALIA	
Date of deposit 27 MARCH 1997 (27/03/97)	Accession Number NM97/05000
C. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) This information is continued on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/>	
Plasmid pBS267	
D. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE (if the indications are not for all designated States)	
E. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable)	
The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later (specify the general nature of the indications e.g., "Accession Number of Deposit")	

For receiving Office use only	
<input type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received with the international application	
Authorized officer	

For International Bureau use only	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received by the International Bureau on:	
29 APR 1997	
Authorized officer 	

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No.

PCT/AU 97/00197

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER					
Int Cl ⁶ : C12N 15/11, 15/53					
According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC					
B. FIELDS SEARCHED					
Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols) WPAT, CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS - Keywords below					
Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched JAPIO, MEDLINE - Keywords below					
Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used) WPAT, JAPIO, CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS, MEDLINE - Keywords: recombinase (WPAT, JAPIO); genetic vectors, recombination (control terms), recombinase (CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS, MEDLINE)					
C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT					
Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.			
A	WO 93/01283 (THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA - THE SECRETARY OF AGRICULTURE) published 21 January 1993, cpd 8 July 1991 (see entire document)	1-70			
A	Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, Vol. 88, December 1991, E.C.Dale & D.W.OW, "Gene transfer with subsequent removal of the selection gene from the host genome". pp. 10558-10562 (see entire document)	1-70			
A	Plant Molecular Biology, Vol. 18, 1992, C.C.Bayley et al, "Exchange of gene activity in transgenic plants catalyzed by the Cre-lox site-specific recombination system". pp. 353-361 (see entire document)	1-70			
<input type="checkbox"/> Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> See patent family annex					
<table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="width: 33%; vertical-align: top;"> <p>* Special categories of cited documents:</p> <p>"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance</p> <p>"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date</p> <p>"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)</p> <p>"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means</p> <p>"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed</p> </td> <td style="width: 33%; vertical-align: top;"> <p>"I" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention</p> <p>"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone</p> <p>"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art</p> <p>"&" document member of the same patent family</p> </td> <td style="width: 33%;"></td> </tr> </table>			<p>* Special categories of cited documents:</p> <p>"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance</p> <p>"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date</p> <p>"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)</p> <p>"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means</p> <p>"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed</p>	<p>"I" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention</p> <p>"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone</p> <p>"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art</p> <p>"&" document member of the same patent family</p>	
<p>* Special categories of cited documents:</p> <p>"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance</p> <p>"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date</p> <p>"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)</p> <p>"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means</p> <p>"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed</p>	<p>"I" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention</p> <p>"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone</p> <p>"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art</p> <p>"&" document member of the same patent family</p>				
Date of the actual completion of the international search 16 June 1997		Date of mailing of the international search report 26 JUN 1997			
Name and mailing address of the ISA/AU AUSTRALIAN INDUSTRIAL PROPERTY ORGANISATION PO BOX 200 WODEN ACT 2606 AUSTRALIA Facsimile No.: (06) 285 3929		Authorized officer J.H. CHAN Telephone No.: (06) 283 2340			

Information on patent family members

PCT/AU 97/00197

Patent Document Cited in Search Report

Patent Family Member

WO 93/01283 CA 2 073 412

END OF ANNEX

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification ⁶ : C12N 15/11, 15/53	A1	(11) International Publication Number: WO 97/37012 (43) International Publication Date: 9 October 1997 (09.10.97)
<p>(21) International Application Number: PCT/AU97/00197</p> <p>(22) International Filing Date: 27 March 1997 (27.03.97)</p> <p>(30) Priority Data: PN 9031 29 March 1996 (29.03.96) AU</p> <p>(71) Applicants (for all designated States except US): COMMON-WEALTH SCIENTIFIC AND INDUSTRIAL RESEARCH ORGANISATION [AU/AU]; Limestone Avenue, Campbell, ACT 2601 (AU). THE AUSTRALIAN NATIONAL UNIVERSITY [AU/AU]; Acton, ACT 2601 (AU).</p> <p>(72) Inventors; and (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): SURIN, Brian, Peter [AU/AU]; 45 Carbeen Street, Rivett, ACT 2611 (AU). DE FEYTER, Robert, Charles [AU/AU]; 10 Stoble Place, Monash, ACT 2904 (AU). GRAHAM, Michael, Wayne [AU/AU]; 10 Eleventh Avenue, St. Lucia, QLD 4067 (AU). WATERHOUSE, Peter, Michael [AU/AU]; 5 Banjine Street, O'Connor, ACT 2601 (AU). KEESE, Paul, Konrad [AU/AU]; 10 Morehead Street, Curtin, ACT 2605 (AU). SHAHJAHAN, Ali [AU/AU]; 18 Tipiloura Street, Ngunawal, ACT 2913 (AU).</p>	<p>(74) Agents: SLATTERY, John, Michael et al.; Davies Collison Cave, 1 Little Collins Street, Melbourne, VIC 3000 (AU).</p> <p>(81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, GH, HU, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ARIPO patent (GH, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).</p> <p>Published With international search report. With indications in relation to deposited biological material furnished under Rule 13bis separately from the description.</p>	
<p>(54) Title: SINGLE-STEP EXCISION MEANS</p> <p>(57) Abstract</p> <p>The present invention is directed to the genetic transformation using multiple genetic sequences, wherein one of said genetic sequences encodes a polypeptide possessing excision activity, specifically a site-specific recombinase activity linked to a transgene unit and the use of this genetic construct in the removal of transgenes therefrom. The present invention provides the means to produce genetically-transformed organisms, in particular plants, in which selectable marker genes have been removed, thereby facilitating multiple sequential genetic transformation events using the same selectable marker gene. Accordingly, the invention provides the means for regulating transgene expression in genetically-manipulated organisms, for example to promote differentiation, de-differentiation, or any unidirectional developmental shift of a target cell which requires the time-specific expression of a particular gene. The invention is particularly suited to the promotion of specific organogeneses in plants using organogenesis-promoting transgenes, wherein the organs which subsequently develop in said plants are genetically transformed with a desired gene but lack organogenesis-promoting transgenes.</p>		

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece			TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	ML	Mali	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MN	Mongolia	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MR	Mauritania	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MW	Malawi	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	MX	Mexico	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NE	Niger	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NL	Netherlands	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NO	Norway	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	NZ	New Zealand		
CM	Cameroon			PL	Poland		
CN	China	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CU	Cuba	KZ	Kazakhstan	RO	Romania		
CZ	Czech Republic	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
DE	Germany	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DK	Denmark	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
EE	Estonia	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 1 -

SINGLE-STEP EXCISION MEANS

The present invention relates generally to genetic sequences and their use in the production of genetically-transformed organisms. More particularly, the present invention is directed to the genetic transformation using multiple genetic sequences, wherein one of said genetic sequences encodes a polypeptide possessing excision activity, specifically a site-specific recombinase activity, and uses of same in the removal of transgenes therefrom. The present invention provides the means to selectively remove transgenes from genetically-transformed organisms. The present invention provides the means to produce genetically-transformed organisms, in particular plants, in which selectable marker genes have been removed, thereby facilitating multiple sequential genetic transformation events using the same selectable marker gene. Additionally, the present invention may be used to transiently integrate any genetic material into the chromosome of an organism, such that it may be expressed only while so integrated. Accordingly, this aspect of the invention provides the means for tightly regulating transgene expression in genetically-manipulated organisms, for example to promote differentiation, de-differentiation, or any unidirectional developmental shift of a target cell which requires the time-specific expression of a particular gene. The invention is particularly suited to the promotion of specific organogeneses in plants using organogenesis-promoting transgenes, wherein the organs which subsequently develop in said plants are genetically transformed with a desired gene but lack organogenesis-promoting transgenes.

Bibliographic details of the publications referred to in this specification by author are collected at the end of the description.

Throughout this specification, unless the context requires otherwise, the word "comprise" or variations such as "comprises" or "comprising" will be understood to imply the inclusion of a stated element or integer or group of elements or integers, but not the exclusion of any other element or integer or group of elements or integers.

Improvements in recombinant DNA technology have produced dramatic changes to the nature

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 2 -

of the pharmaceutical and agricultural industries. In particular, methods for the introduction of desirable genetic traits into a wide range of organisms have led to the production of transgenic organisms which are of significant economic value. For example, transgenic crop plants have been produced with improved disease resistance to a range of plant pathogens and insect pests, digestibility and shelf-life, higher productivity and producing novel secondary metabolites.

Known procedures for the production of transgenic organisms mostly involve the introduction thereto of one or more reporter genes and/or selectable marker genes encoding herbicide or antibiotic resistance to facilitate the detection and/or selection of cells which express the gene, however much concern has been raised about the escape of such genes into the environment. Such concerns are of particular significance to transgenic plants which are capable of reproducing asexually or which comprises a significantly out-breeding population pollinated by wind or insects. Clearly, the removal of selectable marker genes from transgenic organisms prior to their release would alleviate such concerns. In the case of reporter genes, their continued expression in a transgenic organism may represent a biological load which compromises productivity gains.

Furthermore, the expression of certain transgenes such as selectable marker genes and reporter genes is often only desirable or necessary during the initial stages of transformation, in order to assess the efficiency of transformation and to identify and/or select transformed cells. Continued expression of such genes in transformed, regenerated tissues may constitute a genetic load on the organism thus obtained. As a consequence, it is often desirable to remove reporter genes from transgenic material prior to commercial application.

25

Furthermore, as each transformation event requires some form of selection, the introduction of multiple novel traits into an organism is limited by the availability of different selectable marker genes. The removal of selectable marker genes following each transformation event would permit the introduction of multiple genes in stages, using the same selectable marker gene.

30

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

Those skilled in the art are also aware that not all selectable marker genes are of equal utility in the genetic transformation of a particular organism. Clearly, the removal of marker genes following transformation would enable the re-use of an optimum selection system.

5 Known systems for the removal of selected genes from transgenic cells involve the use of site-specific recombination systems, for example the *cre/lox* system (Dale and Ow, 1991; Russell *et al*, 1992) and the *flp/frt* system (Lloyd and Davis, 1994; Lyznik *et al*, 1995) which comprise a loci for DNA recombination flanking a selected gene, specifically *lox* or *frt* genetic sequences, combination with a recombinase, *cre* or *flp*, which specifically contacts
10 said loci, producing site-specific recombination and deletion of the selected gene. In particular, European Patent No. 0228009 (E.I. Du Pont de Nemours and Company) published 29 April, 1987 discloses a method for producing site-specific recombination of DNA in yeast utilising the *cre/lox* system, wherein yeast is transformed with a first DNA sequence comprising a regulatory nucleotide sequence and a *cre* gene and a second DNA sequence
15 comprising a pre-selected DNA segment flanked by two *lox* sites such that, upon activation of the regulatory nucleotide sequence, expression of the *cre* gene is effected thereby producing site-specific recombination of DNA and deletion of the pre-selected DNA segment. United States Patent No. 4,959,317 (E.I. Du Pont de Nemours and Company) filed 29 April
20 1987 and International Patent Application No. PCT/US90/07295 (E.I. Du Pont de Nemours and Company) filed 19 December, 1990 also disclose the use of the *cre/lox* system in eukaryotic cells.

Furthermore, International Patent Application No. PCT/US92/05640 (The United States of America as represented by the Secretary of Agriculture, USA) filed 6 July, 1992 discloses
25 a method of excising and segregating selectable marker genes in higher plants using site-specific recombination systems such as the *cre/lox* or *flp/frt* systems wherein plant cells are first transformed with a recombinant vector which contains a plant-expressible selectable marker gene operably linked to loci for DNA recombination and the selectable marker gene is subsequently excised from transformed plants by further transforming the plant cells with
30 a second recombinant vector which contains a plant-expressible, site-specific recombinase

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 4 -

gene or, alternatively, by cross-pollinating the first-mentioned transformed plant with a second transformed plant which expresses a recombinant site-specific recombinase. As a consequence, the selectable marker gene contained in the first-mentioned transformed plant is excised. According to PCT/US92/05640, the recombinant site-specific recombinase gene
5 is also linked to a selectable marker gene which must be removed to produce a plant which is free of selectable marker transgenes. This approach, therefore, requires at least one generation of conventional plant breeding to remove the second selectable marker gene.

A requirement for the operation of site-specific recombination systems is that the loci for
10 DNA recombination and the recombinase enzyme contact each other *in vivo*, which means that they must both be present in the same cell. The prior art means for excising unwanted transgenes from genetically-transformed cells all involve either multiple transformation events or sexual crossing to produce a single cell comprising *both* the loci for DNA recombination and the site-specific recombinase.

15

Where multiple transformations are performed to achieve this end, several selectable marker genes must also be employed, thereby making their removal from the transformed plant material more difficult. As International Patent Application No. PCT/US92/05640 (USDA) demonstrates, the removal of unwanted selectable marker genes following multiple
20 transformation events, requires a resort to conventional breeding approaches. These approaches thus involve extensive manipulation of transgenic material.

Furthermore, since all of the prior art requires some degree of breeding, the approaches taken are not generally applicable to asexually propagating species or clonally-propagated genetic
25 stocks.

In work leading up to the present invention, the inventors sought to develop an improved system for the removal, deletion or excision of transgenes from genetically-transformed cells, which overcomes the disadvantages of the prior art. Accordingly, the inventors have
30 produced a genetic construct which facilitates the precise excision of genetic material in a

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 5 -

single generation, without the need for sexual crossing. The inventors have further defined an efficient method for the single-step removal, deletion or excision of transgenes, in particular selectable marker genes, reporter genes, hormone-biosynthesis genes, hormone-encoding genes or genetic sequences which encode one or more polypeptides capable of
5 regulating hormone levels, from transformed cells.

Accordingly, one aspect of the present invention provides a genetic construct comprising a first expression cassette which contains a recombinase genetic unit linked to a transgene unit, wherein said expression cassette is flanked by two recombination loci placed upstream and
10 downstream thereof.

The present invention is particularly useful in the removal, deletion or excision of transgenes from vegetatively- or clonally propagated species such as, but not limited to, potatoes, sweet potatoes, jerusalem artichoke, taro or yams, fibre or wood tree crops such as *Eucalyptus ssp.*
15 or *Pinus ssp.*, aspen, ornamental plants such as roses, fuschias, azaleas carnations, camelias or gardenias, citrus crops such as oranges, lemons, grapefruit, tangerines or limes, fruit tress such as apples or pears, berry fruits such as strawberry, raspberry, loganberry or blackberry, tropical crops such as sugarcane, tobacco, bananas, plantain or pineapples or asparagus, amongst others.

20

The invention also permits the introduction of several unlinked transgenes into a single cell via independent transformation events, using the same selectable marker gene or reporter gene.

25 Reference herein to a "gene" or "genes" is to be taken in its broadest context and includes:

- (i) a classical genomic gene consisting of transcriptional and/or translational regulatory sequences and/or a coding region and/or non-translated sequences (i.e. introns, 5'- and 3'-untranslated sequences); and/or
- (ii) mRNA or cDNA corresponding to the coding regions (i.e. exons) and 5'- and 3'-
30 untranslated sequences of the gene; and/or

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 6 -

(iii) a structural region corresponding to the coding regions (i.e. exons) optionally further comprising untranslated sequences and/or a heterologous promoter sequence which consists of transcriptional and/or translational regulatory regions capable of conferring expression characteristics on said structural region.

5

The term "gene" is also used to describe synthetic or fusion molecules encoding all or part of a functional product.

As used herein, the term "transgene" shall be taken to refer to any nucleic acid molecule, including, but not limited to DNA, cDNA, mRNA, tRNA, rRNA, synthetic oligonucleotide molecule, ribozyme, antisense molecule, co-suppression molecule, structural gene, wherein said nucleic acid molecule is introduced into the genome of a cell as an addition to the complement of genetic material present in said cell in the absence of said nucleic acid molecule. In the present context, a transgene is generally integrated into one or more chromosome(s) of the cell, until it is excised therefrom according to the performance of the present invention.

The term "oligonucleotide" refers to any polymer comprising the nucleotides adenine, cytidine, guanine, thymidine, or inosine, or functional analogues or derivatives thereof, capable of being incorporated into a polynucleotide molecule.

The term "synthetic oligonucleotide" refers to any oligonucleotide as hereinbefore defined which is produced by synthetic means, whether or not it is provided directly from said synthetic means.

25

Those skilled in the art will be aware that the term "ribozyme" refers to a synthetic RNA molecule which comprises a hybridising region complementary to two regions, each of at least 5 contiguous nucleotide bases in the target sense mRNA. In addition, ribozymes possess highly specific endoribonuclease activity, which autocatalytically cleaves the target sense mRNA. A complete description of the function of ribozymes is presented by Haseloff and

30

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 7 -

Gerlach (1988) and contained in International Patent Application No. WO89/05852. The present invention extends to ribozymes which target any sense mRNA, thereby hybridising to said sense mRNA and cleaving it, such that it is no longer capable of being translated to synthesise a functional polypeptide product, subject to the proviso that said ribozyme is
5 contained within a genetic construct according to any embodiment described herein.

An "antisense molecule" is an RNA molecule which is transcribed from the complementary strand of a nuclear gene to that which is normally transcribed to produce a "sense" mRNA molecule capable of being translated into a polypeptide or peptide sequence. The antisense
10 molecule is therefore complementary to the sense mRNA, or a part thereof. Although not limiting the mode of action of the antisense molecules of the present invention to any specific mechanism, the antisense RNA molecule possesses the capacity to form a double-stranded mRNA by base pairing with the sense mRNA, which may prevent translation of the sense mRNA and subsequent synthesis of a polypeptide gene product.

15

"Co-suppression" as used herein refers to the reduction in expression of an endogenous gene in a cell that occurs when one or more copies of said gene, or one or more copies of a substantially similar gene are introduced into the cell, regardless of whether or not said endogenous gene is integrated into the chromosome(s) of the cell or maintained as an episome
20 or plasmid therein.

The term "co-suppression molecule" shall be taken to refer to any isolated nucleic acid molecule which is used to achieve co-suppression of an endogenous gene in a cell as hereinbefore defined.

25

The term "transgenic organism" shall be taken to refer to any organism that has a transgene as hereinbefore defined introduced into its genome.

The term "selectable marker gene" shall be taken to refer to any gene as hereinbefore defined,
30 the expression of which in a cell may be utilised to detect and/or select for the presence of

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 8 -

a transgene to which said selectable marker gene is linked or which said selectable marker gene has been co-transformed.

The term "reporter gene" shall be taken to refer to any gene which, when expressed, produces
5 a polypeptide or enzyme capable of being assayed, for example the bacterial chloramphenicol
acetyltransferase gene, β -glucuronidase gene and firefly luciferase gene, amongst others.
Those skilled in the art will be aware that the coding region of a reporter gene may be placed
in operable connection with a promoter sequence such that expression of said reporter gene
may be monitored to determine the pattern of expression regulated by said promoter
10 sequence.

As used herein, the terms "hormone gene", "hormone-biosynthesis gene", "hormone-
encoding gene", "genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating
hormone levels" or similar term, shall be taken to refer to any gene as hereinbefore defined,
15 in particular a structural gene, which encodes a polypeptide hormone molecule, or
alternatively, a gene or structural gene which, when expressed, produces a polypeptide which
comprises an enzymatic activity which synthesizes a hormone molecule or a precursor
molecule thereof.

20 As used herein, the term "hormone" encompasses any chemical substance secreted by an
endocrine gland of an animal or any plant growth regulatory substance such as, but not
limited to, auxins, cytokinins, ethylene, gibberellins, abscisic acid, steroids, prostaglandins,
oestrogens, testosterone and progesterones, amongst others.

25 The term "expression cassette" as used herein refers to a nucleic acid molecule comprising
one or more genetic sequences or genes suitable for expression in a cell such as a eukaryotic
or prokaryotic cell. In its present context, an expression cassette is particularly preferred to
be suitable for expression in a eukaryotic cell such as a plant, animal or yeast cell. In a most
particularly preferred embodiment, an expression cassette is suitable for expression in a plant
30 cell.

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 9 -

As used herein, the term "recombinase genetic unit" shall be taken to refer to any genetic sequence which comprises a recombinase gene in a format suitable for constitutive or inducible expression in a cell.

5 Hereinafter the term "recombinase gene" shall be taken to refer to a gene as hereinbefore defined which comprises a sequence of nucleotides which encodes or is complementary to a sequence of nucleotides which encodes a site-specific recombinase enzyme or polypeptide having site-specific recombinase activity.

10 A "site-specific recombinase" is understood by those skilled in the relevant art to mean an enzyme or polypeptide molecule which is capable of binding to a specific nucleotide sequence, in a nucleic acid molecule preferably a DNA sequence, hereinafter referred to as a "recombination locus" and induce a cross-over event in the nucleic acid molecule in the vicinity of said recombination locus. Preferably, a site-specific recombinase will induce
15 excision of intervening DNA located between two such recombination loci.

The terms "recombination locus" and "recombination loci" shall be taken to refer to any sequence of nucleotides which is recognized and/or bound by a site-specific recombinase as hereinbefore defined.

20

As used herein the term "transgene unit" shall be taken to refer to any genetic sequence which comprises a transgene as hereinbefore defined, in particular a structural gene selected from the list comprising reporter gene, selectable marker gene, hormone biosynthesis gene or hormone-encoding gene or a genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of
25 regulating hormone levels, or a ribozyme, antisense molecule, co-suppression molecule or other nucleic acid molecule.

According to this embodiment of the present invention, it is preferred that the recombinase genetic unit comprise a genetic sequence which encodes a site-specific recombinase placed
30 upstream or 5' of a terminator sequence and operably under the control of a first promoter

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

sequence.

The term "terminator" refers to a DNA sequence at the end of a transcriptional unit which signals termination of transcription. Terminators are 3'-non-translated DNA sequences containing a polyadenylation signal, which facilitates the addition of polyadenylate sequences to the 3'-end of a primary transcript. Terminators active in plant cells are known and described in the literature. They may be isolated from bacteria, fungi, viruses, animals and/or plants. Examples of terminators particularly suitable for use in the genetic constructs of the present invention include the nopaline synthase (NOS) gene terminator of *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*, the terminator of the Cauliflower mosaic virus (CaMV) 35S gene, the zein gene terminator from *Zea mays*, the ribulose -1, 5-biphosphate carboxylase small subunit gene (*rbcS 1a*) terminator, and the isopentenyladenine transferase (*ipt*) terminator, amongst others.

Reference herein to a "promoter" is to be taken in its broadest context and includes the transcriptional regulatory sequences of a classical genomic gene, including the TATA box which is required for accurate transcription initiation, with or without a CCAAT box sequence and additional regulatory elements (i.e. upstream activating sequences, enhancers and silencers) which alter gene expression in response to developmental and/or external stimuli, or in a tissue-specific manner. A promoter is usually, but not necessarily, positioned upstream or 5', of a structural gene, the expression of which it regulates. Furthermore, the regulatory elements comprising a promoter are usually positioned within 2 kb of the start site of transcription of the gene.

In the present context, the term "promoter" is also used to describe a synthetic or fusion molecule, or derivative which confers, activates or enhances expression of a structural gene or recombinase gene in a cell, in particular a plant cell. Preferred promoters may contain additional copies of one or more specific regulatory elements, to further enhance expression of the gene and/or to alter the spatial expression and/or temporal expression. For example, regulatory elements which confer copper inducibility may be placed adjacent to a heterologous

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 11 -

promoter sequence driving expression of a structural gene or recombinase gene, thereby conferring copper inducibility on the expression of said gene.

Placing a gene operably under the control of a promoter sequence means positioning the said
5 gene such that its expression is controlled by the promoter sequence. Promoters are generally positioned 5' (upstream) to the genes that they control. In the construction of heterologous promoter/structural gene combinations it is generally preferred to position the promoter at a distance from the gene transcription start site that is approximately the same as the distance between that promoter and the gene it controls in its natural setting, i.e., the gene from which
10 the promoter is derived. As is known in the art, some variation in this distance can be accommodated without loss of promoter function. Similarly, the preferred positioning of a regulatory sequence element with respect to a heterologous gene to be placed under its control is defined by the positioning of the element in its natural setting, i.e., the genes from which it is derived. Again, as is known in the art, some variation in this distance can also occur.

15

Examples of promoters suitable for use in genetic constructs of the present invention include viral, fungal, animal and plant derived promoters. In a particularly preferred embodiment, the promoter is capable of conferring expression in a eukaryotic cell, especially a plant cell.

The promoter may regulate the expression of a gene constitutively, or differentially with
20 respect to the tissue in which expression occurs or, with respect to the developmental stage at which expression occurs, or in response to external stimuli such as physiological stresses,

or plant pathogens, or metal ions, amongst others. Examples of preferred promoters

according to the present invention include, but are not limited to the CaMV 35S promoter, NOS promoter, octopine synthase (OCS) promoter, Sc1 promoter or Sc4 promoter from

25 subterranean clover stunt virus, seed-specific promoter such as the vicillin promoter or a derivative thereof, floral-specific promoter such as *apetala-3*, anther-specific promoter, tapetum-specific promoter, root-specific promoter, leaf-specific promoter such as the *Arabidopsis thaliana rbcS 1a* promoter or other *rbcS* promoter sequence, stem-specific promoter, light-inducible promoter such as the *Arabidopsis thaliana rbcS 1a* promoter or

30 other *rbcS* promoter sequence, metal-inducible promoter such as the copper-inducible

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 12 -

promoter, heat-shock promoter or other environmentally-inducible promoter such as those induced by anaerobiosis or hypoxia or wound-inducible promoter, amongst others. Those skilled in the art will recognise that the choice of promoter will depend upon the nature of the cell being transformed and when expression of the recombinase, structural gene or other gene
5 contained in the genetic construct of the invention is required.

Those skilled in the art will be aware that, in order for a site-specific recombinase polypeptide or enzyme to function in a eukaryotic cell it must be brought into contact with the substrate molecule upon which it acts (i.e. a nucleic acid molecule such as DNA). Furthermore, it is
10 often desirable to ensure that said recombinase is localised in the nucleus of a eukaryotic cell, for example where the recombinase is required to be expressed in stably-transformed cells where the target DNA upon which the recombinase acts has been incorporated or integrated into the genome of the cell.

15 Accordingly, the recombinase genetic unit of the genetic construct described herein may be further modified in a particularly preferred embodiment to include a genetic sequence which encodes a nuclear localisation signal placed in-frame with the coding region of the recombinase gene. More preferably, the genetic sequence encoding a nuclear localisation signal is placed in-frame at the 5'-terminus or the 3'-terminus, but most preferably at the 5'-
20 terminus, of the coding region of the recombinase gene.

By "in-frame" means that the genetic sequence which encodes the nuclear localisation signal is in the same open reading frame as the genetic sequence which encodes the recombinase with no intervening stop codons, such that when the transcript of the recombinase genetic unit
25 is translated, a single fusion polypeptide is produced which comprises a sequence of amino acids corresponding to the summation of the individual amino acid sequences of the nuclear localisation signal and the recombinase polypeptides.

In the context of the present invention, the essential feature of the recombinase gene is the
30 structural gene region or a derivative thereof which at least encodes a functional site-specific

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 13 -

recombinase enzyme. Accordingly, the structural region of a recombinase gene may be any nucleic acid molecule which is capable of encoding a polypeptide having recombinase activity, optionally further comprising one or more intron sequences, 5'-untranslated sequence or 3'-untranslated sequence.

5

Preferred recombinase genes according to the present invention include the *cre* gene (Abremski *et al*, 1983) and *flp* gene (Golic *et al*, 1989; O'Gorman *et al*, 1991). In a particularly preferred embodiment of the present invention, the recombinase gene is the *cre* gene or a homologue, analogue or derivative thereof which is capable of encoding a functional site-specific recombinase.

The relative orientation of two recombination loci in a nucleic acid molecule or genetic construct may influence whether the intervening genetic sequences are deleted or excised or, alternatively, inverted when a site-specific recombinase acts thereupon. In a particularly preferred embodiment of the present invention, the recombination loci are oriented in a configuration relative to each other such as to promote the deletion or excision of intervening genetic sequences by the action of a site-specific recombinase upon, or in the vicinity of said recombination loci.

Preferred recombination loci according to the present invention are *lox* and *frt*, to be used in combination with *cre* and *flp* recombinase genes, respectively. Other recombinase/recombination loci systems are not excluded. In a most particularly preferred embodiment, however, the recombination loci are *lox* sites, such as *lox P*, *lox B*, *Lox L* or *lox R* or functionally-equivalent homologues, analogues or derivatives thereof.

25

Lox sites may be isolated from bacteriophage or bacteria by methods known in the art (Hoess *et al*, 1982). It will also be known to those skilled in the relevant art that *lox* sites may be produced by synthetic means, optionally comprising one or more nucleotide substitutions, deletions or additions thereto.

30

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 14 -

Also according to this embodiment of the present invention, the transgene unit preferably comprises a structural gene which encodes a polypeptide, for example the coding region of a gene, placed upstream or 5' of a terminator sequence and operably under the control of a second promoter sequence.

5

The terminator and promoter sequences may be any terminator or promoter referred to *supra* or exemplified herein, amongst others.

The structural gene of the genetic construct of the invention may be any structural gene.

10 Preferably, the structural gene is a selectable marker gene, reporter gene, hormone-biosynthesis gene, hormone-encoding gene or a genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels.

Preferred reporter genes are those genes for which their expression is capable of being
15 assayed, for example the bacterial chloramphenicol acetyl transferase (CAT) gene, bacterial β -glucuronidase (*uidA*, GUS or *gusA*) gene, firefly luciferase (*luc*) gene, green fluorescent protein (*gfp*) gene or other gene which is at least useful as an indicator of expression.

Preferred selectable marker genes include genes which when expressed are capable of
20 conferring resistance on a cell to a compound which would, absent expression of said selectable marker gene, prevent or slow cell proliferation or result in cell death. Preferred selectable marker genes contemplated herein include, but are not limited to antibiotic-resistance genes such as those conferring resistance to ampicillin, Claforan, gentamycin, G-418, hygromycin, kanamycin, neomycin, spectinomycin, tetracycline or a derivative or
25 related compound thereof or alternatively, herbicide-resistance genes such as those conferring resistance to the compounds atrazine, Basta, bialaphos, bromoxinol, Buctril, 2,4-D, glyphosate, phosphinothricin, suphonylurea or a derivative or related compound thereof, amongst others. The compound names "Basta", "Buctril", "claforan" and "G-418" are trademarks.

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 15 -

In a particularly preferred embodiment, the selectable marker gene is the neomycin phosphotransferase gene *npt II*, which when expressed confers resistance on a cell to neomycin and kanamycin and related compounds thereof. More preferably, the *nptII* selectable marker gene is placed operably under the control of a promoter suitable for
5 expression in a plant cell.

Preferred hormone-biosynthesis genes, hormone-encoding genes or genetic sequences which encodes one or more polypeptides capable of regulating hormone levels are those genes which encode a polypeptide or enzyme which is involved in at least one biosynthetic step which
10 leads to the production of a plant growth regulatory substance, or at least encode a regulatory polypeptide which is capable of altering the levels of a plant growth regulatory substance in a plant cell.

More preferably, the hormone-biosynthesis or hormone-encoding gene or genetic sequence
15 which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels of the invention, encodes a polypeptide or enzyme which catalyses at least one biosynthetic step leading to the production of a plant growth regulatory substance selected from the list comprising auxins, gibberellins, cytokinins, abscisic acid and ethylene, amongst others, or alternatively, encodes a polypeptide which is capable of altering the levels of one or more of said plant growth
20 regulatory substances in a plant cell.

In a particularly preferred embodiment of the invention, the hormone-biosynthesis or hormone-encoding gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels is a cytokinin gene, more particularly the isopentenyladenine
25 transferase or *ipt* gene. Genetic constructs comprising the *ipt* gene are described herein as "Example 9".

For the present purpose, homologues of a genetic sequence, in particular a structural gene, recombinase gene or recombination locus, shall be taken to refer to an isolated nucleic acid
30 molecule which is substantially the same as, or is functionally identical to, a nucleic acid

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 16 -

molecule of the present invention or its complementary nucleotide sequence, notwithstanding the occurrence within said sequence, of one or more nucleotide substitutions, insertions, deletions, or rearrangements.

5 "Analogues" of a genetic sequence, in particular a structural gene, recombinase gene or recombination locus shall be taken to refer to an isolated nucleic acid molecule which is substantially the same as, or is functionally identical to, a nucleic acid molecule of the present invention or its complementary nucleotide sequence, notwithstanding the occurrence of any non-nucleotide constituents not normally present in said isolated nucleic acid molecule, for
10 example carbohydrates, radiochemicals including radionucleotides, reporter molecules such as, but not limited to DIG, alkaline phosphate or horseradish peroxidase, amongst others.

"Derivatives" of a nucleotide sequence, in particular a structural gene, recombinase gene or recombination locus shall be taken to refer to any isolated nucleic acid molecule which
15 contains significant sequence similarity to said sequence or a part thereof. Generally, the nucleotide sequence of the present invention may be subjected to mutagenesis to produce single or multiple nucleotide substitutions, deletions and/or insertions. Nucleotide insertional derivatives of the nucleotide sequence of the present invention include 5' and 3' terminal fusions as well as intra-sequence insertions of single or multiple nucleotides or nucleotide
20 analogues. Insertional nucleotide sequence variants are those in which one or more nucleotides or nucleotide analogues are introduced into a predetermined site in the nucleotide sequence of said sequence, although random insertion is also possible with suitable screening of the resulting product being performed. Deletional variants are characterised by the removal of one or more nucleotides from the nucleotide sequence. Substitutional nucleotide
25 variants are those in which at least one nucleotide in the sequence has been removed and a different nucleotide or nucleotide analogue inserted in its place.

In an alternative preferred embodiment of the present invention, there is provided a genetic construct comprising a first expression cassette which contains a recombinase genetic unit-
30 linked to a transgene unit as hereinbefore defined, wherein said expression cassette is flanked

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 17 -

by two recombinant loci upstream and downstream thereof and wherein said recombinase genetic unit further comprises the coding region of a *cre* gene or a homologue, analogue or derivative thereof and said recombination loci are further defined as *loxP* sites or a homologue, analogue or derivative thereof.

5

In a further alternative preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a genetic construct comprising a first expression cassette which contains a recombinase genetic unit linked to a transgene unit as hereinbefore defined, wherein said first expression cassette is flanked by two recombinant loci upstream and downstream thereof and wherein said
10 recombinase genetic unit further comprises a genetic sequence which encodes a nuclear localisation signal placed in-frame with the coding region of a *cre* gene or a homologue, analogue or derivative thereof and said recombination loci are further defined as *loxP* sites or a homologue, analogue or derivative thereof.

15 Preferably, the nuclear localisation signal is the SV40 T-antigen type nuclear localisation signal described by Kalderon *et al* (1984).

Those skilled in the art will be aware of how to produce the genetic construct of the invention and of the requirements for obtaining the expression thereof, when so desired, in a specific
20 cell or cell-type under the conditions desired. In particular, it will be known to those skilled in the art that the genetic manipulations required to perform the present invention may require the propagation of the genetic construct described herein or a derivative thereof in a prokaryotic cell such as an *E. coli* cell.

25 To prevent premature excision events, the recombinase gene of the invention should preferably not be expressed to produce a functional recombinase enzyme during these propagation steps and in any case, until so desired. For example, the recombinase gene may be selected or modified such that it is not expressed in a prokaryote cell, for example by modifying codons within the gene to a codon usage not recognised by the prokaryote cell.

30

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 18 -

Means for preventing the expression of a recombinase gene in a prokaryotic cell whilst allowing its expression in a eukaryotic cell include, but are not limited to the use of a specific promoter which is not recognised by prokaryotic DNA-dependant RNA polymerases, the use of a highly-regulated inducible promoter such as a copper-inducible promoter under non-inducing conditions, the insertion of an intron sequence into the coding region of the recombinase gene, or the insertion of spurious stop codons into a structural gene such that the protein is not translated in a prokaryotic cell but may be translated in a eukaryotic tRNA suppressor mutant cell or organism which is capable of inserting an amino acid at positions where said spurious stop codons occur. Such means for preventing expression of genetic sequences in prokaryotic cells are well-known to those skilled in the art. The present invention extends to the use of all means for preventing expression of the recombinase gene in a prokaryotic cell.

Furthermore, expression of the recombinase gene or the production of a functional recombinase enzyme should preferably occur only when so desired in a eukaryotic cell, tissue, organ or organism. For example, wherein the genetic construct of the invention comprises a structural gene which is a selectable marker gene, expression of the recombinase gene will not normally be required until selection of transformed cells or tissue carrying the genetic construct of the invention has taken place. In many such instances where a cell has been transformed with a genetic construct of the present invention and subsequently selected, expression of the recombinase gene will only be required when regeneration of tissues, organs or the whole organism from the transformed cell has commenced or been completed.

In a further example, wherein the transgene of the transgene unit is a hormone-biosynthesis or hormone-encoding gene or a genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels, expression of said transgene preferably promotes a developmental transition in the transformed cell, for example a transition which leads to differentiation or de-differentiation of cells. In plant cells wherein the structural gene encodes a polypeptide which catalyses the biosynthesis of a plant growth regulatory molecule comprising a cytokinin

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 19 -

such as isopentenyladenine, expression of said structural gene preferably leads to the initiation of adventitious shoot formation. Alternatively, wherein the structural gene encodes a polypeptide which catalyses the biosynthesis of a plant growth regulatory molecule comprising an auxin such as IAA, expression of said structural gene preferably leads to the initiation of
5 adventitious root formation. In these cases, it is important that expression of the recombinase be delayed, or at least minimised, until the developmental transition has in fact occurred and expression of the transgene is no longer required, expression of the recombinase may be induced, thereby leading to excision of the transgene.

10 In a further example, wherein the genetic construct of the invention comprises a structural gene which is a reporter gene, expression of the recombinase gene will not normally be required until the detection of cells which express the reporter gene has taken place.

Those skilled in the art will readily be able to determine the appropriate time when expression
15 of the recombinase gene in a transformed cell, tissue, organ or organism is desirable.

Means for preventing the expression of the recombinase gene in a eukaryotic cell, tissue,
20 organ or organism until so desired includes the use of a tissue-specific promoter which is only capable of conferring significant expression on the recombinase gene in regenerated or regenerating tissues, organs or organisms but not in isolated cells or cell masses or undifferentiated cells or cell masses.

Examples of suitable promoters for use in transgenic plant tissues, organs or organisms for limiting the expression of the recombinase gene thereto include a seed-specific promoter such
25 as the vicillin promoter or a derivative thereof, floral-specific promoter such as *apetala-3*, anther-specific promoter, tapetum-specific promoter, root-specific promoter, leaf-specific promoter such as the *Arabidopsis thaliana rbcS 1a* promoter or other *rbcS* promoter sequence or stem-specific promoter, meristem-specific promoter, amongst other promoter sequences.

30 Additional means for preventing the expression of the recombinase gene in a eukaryotic cell

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 20 -

include the use of an inducible promoter sequence to drive expression thereof, such that no significant recombinase activity is detectable until induction of recombinase gene expression has taken place.

- 5 Examples of inducible promoter sequences suitable for use in plants which may be used to control recombinase gene expression include, but are not limited to a light-inducible promoter such as the *Arabidopsis thaliana rbcS 1a* promoter or other *rbcS* promoter sequence, metal-inducible promoter such as the copper-inducible promoter, heat-shock promoter or other environmentally-inducible promoter such as those induced by anaerobiosis or hypoxia or
10 wound-inducible promoter, amongst others.

The present invention extends to the use of all means for preventing expression of the recombinase gene until so desired in a eukaryotic cell, such as a plant, animal or yeast cell.

- 15 Accordingly, in a particularly preferred embodiment of the present invention, the recombinase gene is modified such that significant expression thereof is limited to a plant or animal tissue, organ or organism, but does not occur in prokaryotic cells such as the bacteria *E. coli* or *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* or in isolated cells or cell masses or undifferentiated cells or cell masses derived from eukaryotes.

20

- More particularly, said recombinase gene is modified by the insertion of an intron sequence therein, which is not removed from the primary transcript produced in bacterial cells, thereby resulting in the production of an inactive recombinase enzyme in such cells. In contrast, eukaryotic cells do possess the means for correctly processing primary transcripts which
25 contain an intron sequence and, as a consequence, the intron inserted into a recombinase gene according to this embodiment will be removed from the primary transcript thereof, resulting in the expression of an active recombinase enzyme in eukaryotic cells capable of transcribing said recombinase gene.

- 30 Even more particularly, said recombinase gene, modified as described herein, is placed under

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 21 -

the control of the *Arabidopsis thaliana rbcS 1a* promoter or the Sc4 promoter.

The genetic construct of the present invention is particularly suitable for the transformation of a eukaryotic cell to introduce novel genetic traits thereto, in addition to the provision of
5 resistance characteristics described herein to herbicides, antibiotics or other toxic compounds. Such additional novel traits may be introduced in a separate genetic construct or, alternatively on the same DNA molecule as the genetic constructs already described herein. Those skilled in the art will recognise the significant advantages, in particular in terms of reduced genetic manipulations and tissue culture requirements and increased cost-effectiveness, of including
10 genetic sequences which encode such additional traits and the first expression cassette described herein, in a single genetic construct.

Accordingly, an alternative embodiment of the present invention provides a genetic construct comprising:

- 15 (i) a first expression cassette which contains a recombinase genetic unit linked to a transgene unit as hereinbefore defined;
- (ii) two recombinant loci flanking said first expression cassette; and
- (iii) a second expression cassette comprising a transgene for introduction into a eukaryotic cell such as a plant cell or animal cell, wherein said second expression
20 cassette is juxtaposed to one of said recombination loci or separated therefrom by a spacer region of at least 2 nucleotides in length and wherein said second expression cassette is further separated from said first expression cassette.

The distance separating the second expression cassette and the first expression cassette flanked
25 by recombination loci may be varied and, for the present purpose, it is essential only that sufficient distance separate said second expression cassette from said first expression cassette flanked by recombination loci such that, when excision of the expression cassette has taken place, said transgene of the second expression cassette is not also excised.

30 Preferably, the spacer region is at least 6 nucleotides in length, more preferably at least 10

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 22 -

nucleotides in length and still more preferably at least 50 nucleotides in length.

According to this embodiment, the transgene of the second expression cassette may be any gene as hereinbefore defined, including genes which encode antisense, ribozyme or co-suppression molecules and is not in any way to be limited to a transgene capable of being translated into a functional enzyme or polypeptide.

In an alternative embodiment, the genetic construct of the present invention is further modified such that the first expression cassette flanked by recombinant loci is inserted into, or embedded within, a second expression cassette which comprises a transgene and terminator placed operably under the control of a promoter sequence, wherein said insertion prevents the expression of the second expression cassette.

The transgene of the second expression cassette may be any transgene as hereinbefore defined. In a particularly preferred embodiment of the invention, the transgene of the second expression cassette is a structural gene, for example a reporter gene, selectable marker gene, hormone-biosynthesis gene or hormone-encoding gene or a genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide which regulates hormone levels, as hereinbefore defined, or other structural gene sequence.

20

Preferred reporter genes are selected from the list comprising CAT, GUS, *luc* or *gfp* genes, amongst others. Additional transgenes are not excluded. Suitable promoters or terminators are those described previously.

According to this embodiment of the invention, the first expression cassette flanked by recombination loci may be inserted into the second expression cassette at any site which disrupts expression of the transgene of said second expression cassette, such as between the promoter and transgene, or within the transgene sequence.

In a most preferred embodiment, the first expression cassette flanked by recombination loci

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 23 -

is inserted between the promoter and the transgene of the second expression cassette.

The present invention extends to all genetic constructs which comprise the specific arrangements of first expression cassette flanked by recombination loci defined herein and
5 additional genes for introduction into a eukaryotic cell and/or expression therein.

In a further embodiment of the present invention, the genetic construct of the present invention is also suitable for integration into the genome of a cell in which it is expressed. Those skilled in the art will be aware that, in order to achieve integration of a genetic
10 sequence or genetic construct into the genome of a host cell, certain additional genetic sequences may be required. For example, the successful integration of DNA into the genome of a plant cell mediated by *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* requires the presence of one or more left and/or right T-DNA border regions flanking the genetic sequence to be integrated.

15 Accordingly, the genetic construct of the invention may optionally further comprise additional genetic sequences as required for its integration into the genome of a eukaryotic cell, in particular a plant cell.

Wherein the genetic construct of the invention is intended for use in plants, it is particularly
20 preferred that it be further modified for use in *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation of plants by the inclusion of one or more left and/or right T-DNA border sequences. To facilitate *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation, the first expression cassette flanked by recombination loci and, where applicable, at least the transgene of the second expression cassette, are usually placed between the left and/or right T-DNA border sequences, if more
25 than one of said sequences is present.

Although intended for the transformation of a eukaryotic organism and/or the expression of genes contained therein, the genetic constructs of the present invention may need to be
30 propagated in a prokaryotic organism such as the bacteria *Escherichia coli* or *Agrobacterium*

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 24 -

tumefaciens. Accordingly, the genetic constructs described herein may further comprise genetic sequences corresponding to a bacterial origin of replication and/or a selectable marker gene such as an antibiotic-resistance gene, suitable for the maintenance and replication of said genetic construct in a prokaryotic organism. Such sequences are well-known in the art.

5 Usually, an origin of replication or a selectable marker gene suitable for use in bacteria is physically-separated from those genetic sequences contained in the genetic construct which are intended to be expressed or transferred to a eukaryotic cell, or integrated into the genome of a eukaryotic cell.

10 The present invention extends to all genetic constructs essentially as defined herein, which include further genetic sequences intended for the maintenance and/or replication of said genetic construct in prokaryotes and/or the integration of said genetic construct or a part thereof into the genome of a eukaryotic cell or organism.

15 The genetic constructs of the present invention are useful in producing genetically-transformed cells and/or for the removal of transgenes from genetically-transformed organisms, in particular eukaryotes such as plants and animals. More particularly, the genetic constructs are used for the transformation of plants with selectable marker genes and/or reporter genes and the subsequent excision in a single-step of said genes.

20

Accordingly, a further aspect of the present invention provides a method of removing a transgene from a cell transformed with the genetic construct described according to any of the embodiments herein, said method comprising expressing the recombinase genetic unit of said genetic construct for a time and under conditions sufficient for a site-specific recombinase to
25 be expressed and at least excise the first expression cassette of said genetic construct or a fragment thereof sufficient to disrupt expression of the transgene of said first expression cassette.

Preferably, the transgene is a selectable marker gene or a reporter gene or a hormone-
30 biosynthesis gene or hormone-encoding gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 25 -

capable of regulating hormone levels, as hereinbefore defined.

In an alternative embodiment, wherein the transgene of the first expression cassette is to be expressed prior to its excision, this aspect of the invention relates to a method of transiently
5 expressing a transgene in a stably transformed cell, said method comprising:

(i) stably transforming said cell with a genetic construct comprising a first expression cassette flanked by recombination loci, optionally further comprising a second expression cassette, as described herein;

10 (ii) expressing the transgene of the first expression cassette in said stably transformed cell; and

(iii) expressing the recombinase genetic unit of said genetic construct for a time and under conditions sufficient for a site-specific recombinase to be expressed and at least excise the first expression cassette of said genetic construct or a fragment thereof sufficient to disrupt expression of the transgene of said first expression cassette.

15

In a further alternative embodiment, wherein the transgene of the first expression cassette is a structural gene comprising a hormone-biosynthesis gene or hormone-encoding gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels as hereinbefore defined, the expression of which may induce a developmental transition in a cell
20 and/or organogenesis, the genetic construct of the invention may be used to produce a transformed organ. According to this embodiment, the transgene is expressed in a cell transformed with the subject genetic construct, for a time and under conditions sufficient to promote tissue differentiation or organogenesis, or at least the formation of a primordium. Subsequent to this "developmental transition", and preferably prior to extensive cell division,
25 the recombinase genetic unit of the genetic construct is activated or induced *via* induction or de-repression of the promoter operably connected to the recombinase gene therein, leading to expression of the site-specific recombinase encoded therefor and subsequent or concomitant recombinase-dependant excision of the transgene. The differentiated cells may be grown or cultured under appropriate conditions to produce a differentiated transformed organ or
30 organism.

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 26 -

Preferred hormone-encoding genes or hormone-biosynthesis genes according to this embodiment include plant growth regulatory substance-encoding genes such as, but not limited to, the *ipt* gene.

- 5 In particular applications of the invention to the production of transformed plants, the genetic construct comprising a plant growth regulatory substance-encoding gene, such as *ipt*, may be introduced to specific cells of a whole plant, by microinjection or *A.tumefaciens*-mediated transformation or biolistic methods, wherein expression of the plant growth regulatory substance-encoding gene induces organogenesis *in situ*, producing a chimeric plant.
- 10 Alternatively, the genetic construct may also be used to induce organogenesis from undifferentiated cells derived, for example, from a suspension cell culture or callus. Alternatively, the genetic construct according to this embodiment may also be used to induce organogenesis from tissue explant material, for example leaf discs, stem sections, root explants. Those skilled in the art will be aware of the technology requirements for introducing
- 15 the genetic construct into such plant cells.

As exemplified herein, the inventors have shown that temporary expression of the *ipt* gene *in situ*, in plant stem cells, may be used to produce adventitious transgenic shoots on an otherwise untransformed plant.

20

Similarly, the present invention also contemplates the use of auxin-biosynthesis genes to promote adventitious root formation or gibberellin-biosynthesis genes to promote formation of a floral meristem, amongst others.

- 25 This embodiment of the invention is of particular utility to the agriculture and forestry industries, where the regeneration of whole plants from isolated cells may not be efficient or cost-effective and, as a consequence, the production of transformed plants from isolated cells is not a viable or economic proposition. In such cases, the generation of adventitious transformed shoots, roots or other organs may be particularly advantageous, because *in vitro*
- 30 regeneration procedures will not be required.

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 27 -

Additionally, the transformed organs may be removed from the parent plant and cultured by micropropagation techniques known to those skilled in the art, to produce a whole transgenic organism.

5 As in all other embodiments of the invention described herein, the genetic construct may comprise additional genetic sequences which are desired to be permanently maintained in the transgenic organ or transgenic organism, following excision of the hormone-encoding or hormone-biosynthesis gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels. Preferably, these genes are linked to the first expression cassette
10 described herein, but placed outside the recombination loci, or alternatively, flanking said recombination loci such that they are not excised alongside the first expression cassette.

Excision of the first expression cassette contained in the genetic construct of the invention provides a means for the introduction of a second genetic construct comprising the same
15 structural gene or a homologue, analogue or derivative thereof. This is of particular utility where the structural gene encodes a selectable marker gene and it is either undesirable or impractical to produce a transgenic organism which expresses one or more selectable marker genes.

20 Accordingly, a further aspect of the present invention provides a method for multiply-transforming a cell using a single selectable marker gene, said method comprising the steps of:

- (i) transforming said cell with a genetic construct of the invention substantially as previously described, wherein the transgene of the first expression cassette of said genetic
25 construct is a selectable marker gene;
- (ii) expressing the recombinase gene contained in said genetic construct in said cell or the progeny of said cell to effect excision of the first expression cassette thereof; and
- (iii) transforming the cell obtained in step (ii) with a second genetic construct as hereinbefore described, wherein the transgene of the first expression cassette of said genetic-
30 construct is a selectable marker gene which is substantially the same as the selectable marker

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 28 -

gene use in step (i) or a homologue, analogue or a derivative thereof.

Optionally, said method comprises the further step of repeating step (ii) above.

- 5 Besides marker gene removal and the promotion of organogenesis therein, the inducible excision system described herein has several potential uses.

Firstly, physical methods for plant transformation, including electroporation or CA^{2+} /PEG treatment of protoplasts, biolistic delivery of DNA into plant tissues, or *Agrobacterium*-
10 mediated plant transformation, often result in multiple tandem insertions, which leads in many cases to transgene instability (Matzke and Matzke, 1995). By placing *loxP* sites close to the T-DNA boundaries, and linking excision with reconstitution of a useful gene transcriptional unit, the excision system may be used to excise repeated DNA segments after integration into the plant genome. This would reduce any sequence duplication, thereby preventing transgene
15 instability which arises from DNA methylation, co-suppression/antisense mechanisms or recombination.

Secondly, the approach described herein can, with little modification, be adapted to achieve *in planta* cell-specific ablation. By expressing the *inlscre* gene from a promoter with tight
20 cellular and temporal patterns of expression, and by coupling excision with reconstitution of a cryptic lethal gene, ablation of particular cells or tissues can be achieved, enabling the study of cell lineages *in situ*.

Whilst not wishing to be bound by any theory or mode of action, when the genetic construct
25 of the present invention is inserted into the genome of a eukaryotic cell, in particular a plant cell, expression of any transgene therein may occur, either as constitutive or induced expression. Wherein the transgene of the first expression cassette is a structural gene, in particular a selectable marker gene, such expression facilitates the selection of transformed cells. Wherein the transgene of the first expression cassette is a structural gene, in particular
30 a reporter gene, expression thereof facilitates the detection of cells expressing said reporter

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 29 -

gene or other structural gene. The subsequent induced expression of the recombinase gene produces an active recombinase enzyme which is capable of recognising the two flanking recombination loci producing a genetic recombination event thereabouts, resulting in excision of the first expression cassette. As a consequence, the first expression cassette is deleted from
5 the genome of the transformed cell, which no longer expresses the transgene of the first expression cassette, for example a selectable marker gene or reporter gene.

Wherein the first expression cassette is inserted into, or embedded within a second expression cassette comprising a promoter, transgene and terminator to disrupt expression thereof,
10 excision of the first expression cassette restores expression of the second expression cassette, thereby facilitating detection of the excision event.

A further aspect of the present invention provides a cell transformed with a genetic construct of the invention substantially as previously described.

15

Preferably, the transformed cell is a eukaryotic cell such as a plant, animal or yeast cell. More preferably the cell is a plant cell. In a particularly preferred embodiment, the cell is derived from a plant species which is asexually or clonally propagated. Examples of plants which are particularly suited to the practice of the present invention include, but are not
20 limited to stolon-bearing or tuber-bearing plants such as potatoes, sweet potatoes, jerusalem artichoke, taro or yams, fibre or wood tree crops such as *Eucalyptus ssp.* or *Pinus ssp.*, aspen, ornamental plants such as gerberas, chrysanthemum, orchids, lilies, roses, fuschias, azaleas carnations, camellias or gardenias, citrus crops such as oranges, lemons, grapefruit, tangerines or limes, fruit tress such as apples or pears, berry fruits such as strawberry,
25 raspberry, loganberry or blackberry, tropical crops such as sugarcane, tobacco, bananas, plantain or pineapples or asparagus, amongst others, in particular plants where the removal of transgenes by sexual recombination means is difficult.

In a particularly preferred embodiment of the present invention, the transformed cell is a
30 tobacco cell.

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 30 -

However, the present invention is also useful for removing unwanted genes from *any* transformed plant species which is capable of being propagated vegetatively from cuttings, stolons, tubers or by grafting, layering etc., as well as by sexual hybridisation.

5 Means for introducing recombinant DNA into plant tissue include, but are not limited to, direct DNA uptake into protoplasts (Krens *et al.*, 1982; Paszkowski *et al.*, 1984), PEG-mediated uptake to protoplasts (Armstrong *et al.*, 1990) microparticle bombardment electroporation (Fromm *et al.*, 1985), microinjection of DNA (Crossway *et al.*, 1986), microparticle bombardment of tissue explants or cells (Christou *et al.*, 1988; Sanford, 1988),
10 vacuum-infiltration of plant tissue with nucleic acid, or T-DNA-mediated transfer from *Agrobacterium* to the plant tissue. Representative T-DNA vector systems are described in the following references: An *et al.* (1985); Herrera-Estrella *et al.* (1983a,b); Herrera-Estrella *et al.* (1985).

15 For microparticle bombardment of cells, a microparticle is propelled into a plant cell, in particular a plant cell not amenable to *Agrobacterium* mediated transformation, to produce a transformed cell. Wherein the cell is a plant cell, a whole plant may be regenerated from the transformed plant cell. Alternatively, other non-plant cells derived from multicellular species may be regenerated into whole organisms by means known to those skilled in the art. Any
20 suitable ballistic cell transformation methodology and apparatus can be used in practicing the present invention. Exemplary apparatus and procedures are disclosed by Stomp *et al.* (U.S. Patent No. 5,122,466) and Sanford and Wolf (U.S. Patent No. 4,945,050). When using ballistic transformation procedures, the genetic construct may incorporate a plasmid capable of replicating in the cell to be transformed.

25

Examples of microparticles suitable for use in such systems include 1 to 5 μm gold spheres. The DNA construct may be deposited on the microparticle by any suitable technique, such as by precipitation.

30 Plant species may also be transformed with the genetic construct of the present invention by

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 31 -

the DNA-mediated transformation of plant cell protoplasts and subsequent regeneration of the plant from the transformed protoplasts in accordance with procedures well known in the art.

Any plant tissue capable of subsequent clonal propagation, whether by organogenesis or
5 embryogenesis, may be transformed with a vector of the present invention. The particular tissue chosen will vary depending on the clonal propagation systems available for, and best suited to, the particular species being transformed. Exemplary tissue targets include leaf disks, pollen, embryos, cotyledons, hypocotyls, megagametophytes, callus tissue, existing meristematic tissue (e.g., apical meristem, axillary buds, and root meristems), and induced
10 meristem tissue (e.g., cotyledon meristem and hypocotyl meristem).

The term "organogenesis", as used herein, means a process by which shoots and roots, or other organs, are developed sequentially from meristematic centers.

15 The term "embryogenesis", as used herein, means a process by which shoots and roots develop together in a concerted fashion (not sequentially), whether from somatic cells or gametes.

Plants of the present invention may take a variety of forms. The plants may be chimeras of
20 transformed cells and non-transformed cells; the plants may be clonal transformants (e.g., all cells transformed to contain the expression cassette); the plants may comprise grafts of transformed and untransformed tissues (e.g., a transformed root stock grafted to an untransformed scion in citrus species). The transformed plants may be propagated by a variety of means, such as by clonal propagation or classical breeding techniques. For
25 example, a first generation (or T1) transformed plants may be selfed to give homozygous second generation (or T2) transformed plants, and the T2 plants further propagated through classical breeding techniques.

30 Following excision of the first expression cassette of the genetic construct defined herein, a

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 32 -

small "footprint" may be left in the genome of the transformed cell.

As used herein, the term "footprint" shall be taken to refer to any derivative of a genetic construct described herein which is produced by excision, deletion or other removal of the
5 first expression cassette from the genome of a cell transformed previously with said genetic construct.

A footprint generally comprises at least a single copy of the recombination loci used.
10 However, a footprint may comprise additional sequences derived from the genetic construct, for example nucleotide sequences derived from the recombinase gene unit, left border sequence, right border sequence, first expression cassette, second expression cassette, origin of replication, or other vector-derived nucleotide sequences. More likely, a footprint will comprise, in addition to the single copy of a recombination locus, nucleotide sequences
15 derived from the recombinase gene unit, transgene unit of the first expression cassette, or other first expression cassette sequences.

Accordingly, a footprint is identifiable according to the nucleotide sequence of the recombination locus of the genetic construct. In particular, the footprint will comprise a
20 sequence of nucleotides corresponding or complementary to a *lox* site.

A footprint thus comprises a sequence of at least about 30 nucleotides, preferably about 40 nucleotides, more preferably at least about 50 nucleotides and even more preferably at least about 100 nucleotides derived from the sequences outside (i.e. upstream and downstream) the
25 region of the second expression cassette.

Those skilled in the art will readily be capable of determining whether a cell comprises a footprint of a genetic construct of the invention as hereinbefore defined, using known techniques and without undue experimentation.

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 33 -

Accordingly, the present invention extends to a transformed cell or whole organism which comprises a footprint derived from a genetic construct as hereinbefore defined and to the progeny of said transformed cell or whole organism.

- 5 The present invention is further described with reference to the following non-limiting Figures and Examples.

In the Figures:

- 10 **Figure 1** is a schematic representation of the *cre/lox* site-specific recombination constructs; (A) Site-specific recombination test sequences in plasmid pBS210, and pBS210a, the predicted product of recombination. In pBS210, the *EcoRI-HindIII* fragment containing the Sc4 promoter (Sc4), a 35S promoter-*nptII*-35S3' transcriptional unit (*nptII*) flanked by *loxP* (*lox*) sites (arrowhead) in direct-repeat configuration, and a promoterless *gusA-nos3'* cassette, is shown. *cre/lox* site-specific recombination should remove the *loxP*-bound *nptII* transcriptional unit, producing pBS210a. Restriction enzyme designations: E, *EcoRI*; H, *HindIII*. (B) T-DNA regions of the binary vectors pBS215 and its derivative, pBS229. pBS215 contains the *EcoRI-HindIII* fragment from pBS210 between the T-DNA left (LB) and right border (RB) sequences. In pBS229, a *rbcS 1a* promoter-*inlscre-rbcS 1a3'* cassette (15 *inlscre*) was cloned into the *XhoI* (X) site of pBS215. Arrows in boxes indicate the direction of transcription.

- Figure 2:** is a photographic representation showing histochemical staining for GUS activity. 2 1/2- week old regenerating tobacco calli were stained for GUS activity using X-gluc. Blue coloration indicative of GUS activity is seen, usually localised but in some cases throughout the regenerating shoot.

- Figure 3** is a photographic representation of a ³²P-labelled autoradiogram showing neomycin phosphotransferase (*NptII*) activity assays. Extracts of two leaves from each plant were assayed for *NptII* activity, and 15 µl of the reaction blotted onto Whatman P-81 paper. The

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 34 -

plant from which the extract was derived is shown (numbers) at the top left corner of each pair of spots. Shown are the *NptII* activity dot blots for five ntBS229 GUS⁺T₀ plants (# 4,7,8,17 and 20), and one GUS⁻ plant (#6) (Figure 3A), and for thirteen ntBS229-4 regenerants (Figure 3B). Included are the activities corresponding to positive (+) and 5 negative (-) controls.

Figure 4a is a schematic representation of the genomic copies of the pBS229 T-DNA construct carried by ntBS229 plants before (panel A) and after the predicted *cre/lox*-mediated site-specific recombination event (panel B). Indicated below each map are the primers 10 (triangles A-E) used for PCR analysis of DNA prepared from these plants. The expected PCR product obtained using each of the primer pairs indicated is represented as a line with the expected size (kb) of the PCR product shown below.

Figure 4b is a photographic representation showing the results of the PCR analysis for 15 ntBS229 T₀ and ntBS229-4 regenerated plants (lanes 1-6), with the primers used in each case indicated above the numbered lanes. Template DNA was isolated from either a chimeric Gus⁺*nptII*⁺ T₀ plant, ntBS229-4 (lanes 1,3,5) or from a typical GUS *nptII* ntBS229-4 regenerant (lanes 2,4,6). Lane S, *EcoRI*-digested SPP1 DNA and *HpaII*-digested pUC19 size markers.

20

Figure 5 is a schematic representation of the *cre/lox* site-specific recombination binary vector plasmids pBS266 and pBS267. Each plasmid contains the Sc4 promoter (Sc4), a *cre* and an Sc1 promoter-*nptII*- Sc3 terminator (Sc1-*nptII*) cassette both flanked by *loxP* (P) sites in direct repeat configuration, and a promoterless *gusA-nos3'* cassette. The *cre* cassette present 25 in pBS266 is pAp1-*inlscre-nos3'* (pAp1-*inlscre*), while in pBS267 it is pVic-*inlscre-nos3'* (pVic-*inlscre*). With both pBS266 and pBS267, *cre/lox* site-specific recombination should remove the *cre* and Sc1-*nptII* cassettes, producing a transcriptionally active Sc4 promoter-driven *gusA* transcriptional unit, as shown. Arrows in boxes indicate the direction of transcription, while the dotted lines represent the T-DNA left border (Lb) and right border 30 (Rb).

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 35 -

Figure 6 is a schematic representation of relevant parts of the *ipt* constructs and related plasmids. In pRDF9574, the *Hind*III fragment containing an enhanced 35S promoter (e35S), tobacco mosaic virus 5' untranslated region (TMV5'), *Nco*I and *Bam*HI restriction sites and *nos*3' termination region is shown. To make pRDF10072, the *Nco*I-*Bam*HI fragment from pRZ4 was inserted between the *Nco*I and *Bam*HI sites of pRDF9574. To make pRDF10086, the *Hind*III fragment from pRDF10072 containing the *ipt* gene was inserted into the *Hind*III site of the binary vector pIG121-Hm (Hiei *et al.*, 1994), between the T-DNA left (LB) and right border (RB) sequences. Arrows in boxes indicate the direction of transcription. Restriction site designations: H, *Hind*III; N, *Nco*I; B, *Bam*HI.

10

Figure 7 is a schematic representation of relevant parts of plasmids used to construct pRDF10543. In pBS209, an *Eco*RI-*Hind*III fragment is shown containing the Sc4 promoter (Sc4), *loxP* (*lox*) sites (large arrowheads) in direct-repeat configuration, *Xba*I and *Xho*I restriction sites, and a *gusA-nos*3' cassette. Several changes were made to pBS209 as described in Example 2 to make pRDF10501, including introduction of an intron into the *gusA* coding region (intron_{gusA}). This *Hind*III fragment was inserted into pRDF10346, a binary vector containing *npt*II (*nos-npt-nos*3') and *oxy* (35S-*oxy-nos*3') genes between the T-DNA left (LB) and right border (RB) sequences, to make pRDF10543. Arrows in boxes indicate the direction of transcription. Restriction site designations: H, *Hind*III; E, *Eco*RI; Xba, *Xba*I; Xho, *Xho*I.

Figure 8 is a schematic representation of a genetic construct containing an excisable *ipt* gene. The 35S-*ipt-ipt*3' gene is inserted into the *Xba*I site of pRDF10543, and the product is used for insertion of the *ssu-inscre-ssu*3' fragment from prbcS-inscre. All other designations are as for Figure 7. Excision of the 35S-*ipt-ipt*3' and *SSU-inscre-ssu*3' transgenes via *cre*-mediated recombination at *lox* sites leads to re-constitution of *gusA* gene expression under the control of the Sc4 promoter in transformed plant cells.

Figure 9 is a copy of a photographic representation of a ³²P-labelled autoradiogram showing neomycin phosphotransferase (Npt) activity assays. Extracts of leaves from 17 shoots

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 36 -

(numbers 1-17) that arose after inoculation of tobacco plants with *Agrobacterium* AGL1/pRDF10086 or from control, untransformed leaves (C) were assayed for Npt activity according to McDonnell *et al.*, (1987). Shoot Nos. 4, 5, 9, 15, 16, and 17 were clearly positive for Npt activity.

5

Figure 10 is a photographic representation of a shoot (arrow) that arose on a tobacco plant after inoculation with *Agrobacterium* AGL1/pRDF10086. The shoot had a stem that was pale green to white in colour, with thickened leaves and stems, showed obvious loss of apical dominance, and was phenotypically Gus-positive and Npt-positive. The shoot was approximately 10 cm long 9 weeks after inoculation.

Figure 11 is a photographic representation of a shoot, (arrow) approximately 2 cm long, that arose on a tobacco plant after inoculation with *Agrobacterium* AGL1/pRDF10086. The shoot was mostly creamy white in colour with distinct zones of normal green colour. The white zones were Gus-positive, the green zones were Gus-negative.

15

Figure 12 is a photographic representation of a cluster of shoots (arrow) approximately 2 cm long, that arose on a tobacco plant after inoculation with *Agrobacterium* AGL1/pRDF10086. The shoots were normal green in colour and phenotypically Gus-negative and Npt-negative.

20

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO,

- 37 -

EXAMPLE 1**Enzymes and Chemicals.**

Restriction enzymes, DNA polymerase I large fragment (Klenow) and T₄ DNA ligase were
5 purchased from New England Biolabs, and AmpliTaq DNA polymerase from Perkin Elmer.
Kanamycin sulfate was purchased from Sigma, and 5-bromo-4-chloro-3-indolyl- β -D-
glucuronic acid (X-gluc) was from Diagnostic Chemicals (Canada). Oligonucleotides were
synthesised on an Applied Biosystems, 394 DNA synthesiser.

10

EXAMPLE 2**Plasmid Constructions.**

Cloning and related techniques were performed essentially as described by Sambrook *et al*
(1989) with minor variations. Nucleotide sequences of plasmid constructs were verified by
15 DNA sequencing of plasmid DNA using the dideoxy chain-termination method (Sanger *et al*,
1977).

(i) Construction of pUC119-cre, pUC119-nlscre and pUC119-inlscre.

20 The *cre* open reading frame (orf) was amplified by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) from the
bacteriophage P1 genome using the 5' *cre* and 3' *cre* oligonucleotide primers (primers D and
E, respectively set forth in Example 4). Using these primer sequences, an *Nco*I site was
introduced at the initiating ATG of the *cre* orf, resulting in a Ser -> Ala change in the amino
acid sequence of the *cre* polypeptide, at amino acid position 2. The amplified DNA fragment
25 was digested with *Eco*RI and cloned into the *Eco*RI site of pUC119 (Vieira and Messing,
1987), creating pUC119-cre, for subsequent modification.

An SV40 T-antigen type nuclear localisation signal (nls), comprising the amino acid sequence
Met-Ala-Pro-Lys-Lys-Lys-Arg-Lys-Val-Thr (Kalderon *et al*, 1984), was introduced upstream
30 of the *cre* coding region in the plasmid pUC119-cre. A double stranded synthetic DNA

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 38 -

fragment encoding nls was produced by primer extension using Klenow enzyme and subsequently cloned into the *Hind*III and *Nco*I sites of the plasmid pUC119-cre, creating pUC119-nlscre. When translated, the *nlscre* orf produces an in-frame fusion polypeptide between nls and cre polypeptides.

5

The third intron of the *Parasponia andersonii* haemoglobin gene (Landsmann *et al.*, 1986) was isolated by PCR and inserted, using the *Pst*I termini introduced by the PCR primers, into plasmid pUC119-nlscre, to disrupt the *nlscre* orf. First, a *Pst*I site was introduced into the *nlscre* orf of pUC119-nlscre without altering the amino acid sequence encoded thereby, using
10 site-directed mutagenesis to substitute T for G at position 264 of the *nlscre* orf (²⁶²CTGCAG). The haemoglobin intron was then cloned as a *Pst*I fragment into the *Pst*I site of pUC119-nlscre, to produce the plasmid pUC119-inlscre.

(ii) Construction of p35S-cre, p35S-nlscre and p35S-inlscre.

15

The *cre*, *nlscre* and *inlscre* genes were cloned from their respective pUC119 plasmids into pJ35SN (Landsmann *et al.*, 1989), creating the plasmids p35S-cre, p35S-nlscre and p35S-inlscre, respectively. In these plasmids, expression of *cre* and its derivatives is under control of the cauliflower mosaic virus 35S (35S) promoter. Furthermore, the nopaline synthase gene
20 polyadenylation signal (*nos*3') is located downstream of the *cre* orf in each plasmid.

(iii) Construction of prbcS-inlscre.

The *Eco*RI fragment of pUC119-inlscre comprising the *inlscre* orf was end-filled using
25 Klenow enzyme and placed upstream of a 0.45 kb *rbcS 1a* polyadenylation signal (*rbcS 1a* 3' end) and operably under the control of the 1.7 kb *A. thaliana rbcS 1a* promoter sequence (Donald and Cashmore, 1990) in pWM5 (Tabe *et al.*, 1995). The resulting construct was designated prbcS-inlscre.

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

(iv) Construction of pBS210

This plasmid, a derivative of the vector pGEM3zf+ (Promega), contained a cryptic *gusA* reporter gene upstream of the *nos3'* polyadenylation signal and placed operably under the control of the Sc4 promoter from the genome of subterranean clover stunt virus (SCSV) (Boevink *et al.*, 1995). A schematic representation of pBS210 is provided in Figure. 1A.

The *gusA* reporter gene was inactive by the insertion of a DNA fragment containing a *loxP*-bound neomycin phosphotransferase gene (*nptII*) expressed from the 35S promoter and 35S polyadenylation signals (35S 3') (Tabe *et al.*, 1995), between the Sc4 promoter and the *gusA* coding sequence. Site-specific recombination of pBS210 in which excision of the *lox*-bound 35S-*nptII*-35S cassette occurs, produces the plasmid pBS210a (Figure. 1A).

15 (v) Construction of pBS215 and pBS229.

The Sc4-*lox*-35S-*nptII*-35S-*lox*-*gusA*-*nos* cassette was cloned out from the plasmid pBS210 (Figure. 1A) as an *EcoRI*-*HindIII* fragment, from upstream of the Sc4 promoter (*EcoRI*) to downstream of the *nos3'* polyadenylation signal (*HindIII*), end-filled using Klenow enzyme and cloned into the end-filled *Bam*HI and *EcoRI* sites of the binary vector pTAB5 (Tabe *et al.*, 1995). The new binary vector thus produced was designated pBS215 (Figure. 1B) in which the *loxP*-bound 35S-*nptII*-35S cassette provided the only selectable marker.

Plasmid pBS215 contains a unique *XhoI* site adjacent to the 35S 3' end of the *nptII* cassette within the region bounded by *loxP*. A blunt-ended *EcoRI* fragment, containing the *rbcS 1a* promoter placed upstream of the *inlscre* orf and *rbcS 1a* 3' end (i.e. *rbcS 1a*-*inlscre*-*rbcS 1a*), was sub-cloned from the plasmid prbcS-*inlscre* into the end-filled *XhoI* site of pBS215, creating the plasmid pBS229 (Figure 1B).

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

vi) Construction of pRDF10072 and pRDF10086

The *ipt-ipt3'* cassette was cloned out from plasmid pRZ4, a derivative of pRZ3 (Ma *et al*, 1997) containing an *NcoI* site at the translation initiator ATG of *ipt*, as an *NcoI-BamHI* fragment (partial digestion with *BamHI*) and inserted between the *NcoI* and *BamHI* sites of pRDF9574 (de Feyter *et al*, 1997) to create pRDF10072 (Figure 6). pRDF9574 contains plant gene expression signals including an enhanced 35S promoter (Kay *et al*, 1987), the tobacco mosaic virus (TMV) 5' untranslated region corresponding to nucleotides 1-67 of TMV (Goelet *et al*, 1982) and the 3' terminator region of a nopaline synthase gene (*nos*). The *HindIII* fragment containing the *ipt* gene of pRDF10072 was inserted into the *HindIII* site of the binary vector pIG121-Hm (Hiei *et al*, 1994) to create pRDF10086 (Figure 6)

(vii) Construction of pRDF10302, pRDF10453 and pRDF10501

pBS209 is identical to pBS210 (Figure 1) except that it lacks the *nptII* gene. pBS209 (Figure 7) contains an Sc4 promoter and a *gusA* coding region flanking a pair of *lox* recombination sites. pBS209 also has unique *XhoI* and *XbaI* sites between the *lox* sites. The *EcoRI* site of pBS209 was converted to a *HindIII* site using an EcoHind adaptor (5' AATTAAGCTT 3'), creating pRDF10302. The Sc4-*lox-gusA-nos3'* cassette contained on pRDF10302 conferred Gus activity to *Agrobacterium* when introduced into the bacterium on a binary plasmid, so an intron was inserted into the *gus* coding region to prevent Gus expression in bacteria. This was achieved by replacing a *Clal-SnaBI* fragment, containing a 5' portion of the *gus* coding region, from pRDF10302 with an *XbaI-SnaBI* fragment from pIG121-Hm (Hiei *et al*, 1994) containing the corresponding 5' portion of the *gus* gene with an intron inserted. The digested *Clal* and *XbaI* ends were endfilled using Klenow enzyme prior to ligation. The resultant plasmid was designated pRDF10453. The S4-*lox-intronusA-nos3'* cassette of pRDF10453 directed expression of Gus activity in tobacco cells in transient assays, but did not confer Gus activity to *Agrobacterium* cells, indicating that insertion of the intron achieved its purpose. An *EcoRI* site was introduced into pRDF10453 at the position of the *XhoI* site using an *XhoEco* adaptor (5' TCGAGAATTC 3'), creating pRDF10501 (Figure 7).

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

(viii) Construction of pRDF10278 and pRDF10543

A polylinker containing *KpnI*, *SacI* and *EcoRI* sites was deleted from pRPA-BL-429, a plasmid containing a 35S-*oxy-nos3'* gene provided by Rhône-Poulenc, by digestion with *KpnI* 5 (partial) and *EcoRI* followed by blunting with T4 DNA polymerase and recircularisation with T4 DNA ligase, creating pRDF10278. A 2.2 kb *HindIII-KpnI* fragment of pRDF10278 containing the 35S promoter and *oxy* coding region, after blunting the digested *KpnI* end with T4 DNA polymerase, was inserted between the *HindIII* and *BamHI* (endfilled) sites of pIG121-Hm, creating pRDF10346 (Figure 7). The binary vector pRDF10346 contains a *nptII* 10 gene and an *oxy* gene (Stalker *et al*, 1988), driven by *nos* and 35S promoters, respectively. The *HindIII* fragment containing the *Sc4-lox-intronus-nos* cassette from pRDF10501 was inserted into the *HindIII* site of pRDF10346, creating pRDF10543 (Figure 7). This plasmid confers Gus expression and resistance to bromoxynil on plant cells.

15 (ix) Construction of a genetic construct containing an excisable *ipt* gene

The *HindIII* fragment containing the 35S-*ipt-ipt3'* gene from pRDF10072 is inserted into the 20 *XbaI* site of pRDF10543 (Figure 7). This is done readily after half filling the restricted sites, treating the *HindIII* ends with Klenow, dATP and dGTP, and the *XbaI* ends with Klenow, dCTP and dTTP, before ligation of the fragments. The resultant plasmid contains a unique *EcoRI* site which is used for insertion of an *EcoRI* fragment containing the *ssu-inscre-ssu3'* cassette from prbcS-inscre, creating a genetic construct that contains excisable *ipt* and *inscre* genes. This construct is then introduced into *Agrobacterium* for subsequent inoculation into plants.

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 42 -

EXAMPLE 3

Protoplast Assays, Transgenic Plants and Phenotype Analysis.

Protoplasts of *Nicotiana plumbaginifolia* were prepared, electroporated with DNA and
5 assayed for β -glucuronidase (GUS) activity as described by Graham and Larkin (1995).

For *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation of plant material with the plasmid pBS229,
pBS229 was transferred into *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* strain LBA4404 and leaf discs of
Nicotiana tabacum cv. Wisconsin 38 were infected with LBA4404/pBS229 as described by
10 Ellis *et al* (1987), with the following modifications to the plant transformation procedure:
Leaf pieces were co-cultivated with *A. tumefaciens* cells containing plasmid pBS229, and
maintained in the dark for two weeks on MS medium (Murashige and Skoog, 1962)
containing 100 μ g/ml kanamycin sulfate and 500 μ g/ml cefotaxime (Claforan, Hoechst). The
leaf pieces were then transferred to the light, and kept on MS media without antibiotic
15 selection.

The GUS phenotype of transformed plant tissue was determined by histochemical staining
with X-gluc (Jefferson *et al*, 1987). *Npr*II assays were performed on transgenic leaf tissue
extract according to (McDonnell *et al*, 1987).

20

EXAMPLE 4

Molecular Analysis of Plant DNA.

25 Plant DNA was prepared according to deFeyter (1996).

DNA was amplified in PCR reactions using 30 cycles of denaturation, annealing and
extension at 94°C for 15 sec, 55°C for 30 sec, and 72°C for 1 min, respectively. Reaction
products were resolved by electrophoresis in 1.5% (w/v) agarose gels.

30

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 43 -

The sequences of the PCR primers used to analyse plant DNA were as follows:

- Primer A: 5'-ATAAGAATGCGGCCGCACCCCGTGCCGGGATCAG-3';
Primer B: 5'-CATCAGAGCAGCCGATTGTCT-3';
Primer C: 5'-GGTTTCTACAGGACGTAACAT-3';
5 Primer D: 5'-GCGGAATTCGTGACCATGGCCAATTTACTGACCG-3';
Primer E: 5'-GCGGAATTCAATCATTACGCGTTAATGG.

EXAMPLE 5

10 Demonstration of *cre/lox*-mediated excision in transient expression assays

The strategy described herein is based upon an improvement to the inducible *cre/lox*-mediated *cis*-excision of transgenes, in particular selectable marker genes used in plant transformation.

15

The Examples described herein report the preparation of a DNA construct carrying the *cre* gene expressed from a regulatable plant promoter, and a selectable marker gene, *nptII*, which encodes neomycin phosphotransferase. The *cre* and *nptII* transcriptional units are located within the segment of DNA flanked by *loxP* sequences. In attempts to make a *cis*-acting excision construct by ligation of the *cre* gene, or its derivative containing a nuclear localisation signal (*nlscre*), into a plasmid containing two *loxP* sites in direct repeat configuration, all recovered recombinant plasmids had deletions consistent with *cre/lox*-mediated excision (data not shown). To prevent premature excision in *E.coli*, the third intron of the *P. andersonii* haemoglobin gene was introduced into the *cre* coding region of the *nlscre* 25 orf. This modified orf, *inlscre*, was able to be cloned into *loxP*-containing plasmids, indicating that the presence of the intron significantly reduced expression of *nlscre* in bacteria.

The *inlscre* orf was then assayed in a recombination test system and its activity compared to that of the *cre* and *nlscre* genes, to determine whether *inlscre* potentially expressed wild-type 30 *cre* recombinase activity in eukaryotic cells. The recombination substrate in this assay,

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 44 -

plasmid pBS210, carries a *gusA* reporter gene construct rendered inactive by the insertion of the 35S-*nptII*-35S transcriptional unit between the promoter (Sc4) and the *gusA* gene (Figure 1A). The 35S-*nptII*-35S cassette is bound by two *loxP* sites in pBS210, in direct-repeat configuration. A successful *cre/lox*-mediated recombination event should excise the DNA
5 fragment between the two *loxP* sites, removing the *nptII* cassette and producing the expected recombination test product, pBS210a (Figure 1A), thereby activating the Sc4 promoter-derived expression of the *gusA* gene. The Sc4 promoter drives high level GUS expression in tobacco protoplasts and callus, and predominantly vascular expression in tobacco plants (Boevink *et al*, 1996).

10

The recombination mechanism shown in Figure 1A was tested initially in a transient expression assay using transfected tobacco protoplasts. Protoplasts were electroporated in the presence of plasmid pBS210 alone or co-electroporated with pBS210 plus p35S-*cre*, pBS210 plus p35S-*nlsc* or pBS210 plus p35S-*inlsc*. GUS activity was measured after 72 hours.
15 The results obtained (Table 1) indicate that plasmid pBS210 is unable to express GUS in eukaryotic cells, in the absence of *cre*. The inclusion of a plasmid capable of expressing *cre* or *nlsc* in electroporations activated GUS expression of pBS210. Whilst not wishing to be bound by any theory or mode of action, GUS expression was the result of *cre/lox*-mediated recombination of pBS210, producing the expected excision product pBS210a (Figure 1A).

20

Furthermore, the data shown in Table 1 indicate that the *inlsc* gene encoded as much as 37% of the recombinase activity of the *cre* or *nlsc* genes (Table 1), suggesting that splicing of the intron was occurring in transfected protoplasts. The transient expression data validated the *cre/lox*-mediated recombination mechanism involving pBS210, shown schematically in
25 Figure 1A.

A modified version of plasmid pBS210 was prepared for subsequent use in the *in planta* gene excision experiments described below, in Examples 6-8.

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 45 -

TABLE 1

cre/lox-mediated reconstitution of GUS expression from PBS210

5	ELECTROPORATED PLASMID	β -Glucuronidase, units/25 μ g protein
	pBS210	0
	pBS210 + p35s-cre	133
	pBS210 + p35S-nlscre	141
	pBS210 + p35S-inlscre	51

10

Protoplast extracts were prepared and β -Glucuronidase activity was measured by the MUG method. Activities (relative fluorescence units) represent the average of two experiments.

15

EXAMPLE 6**Inducible *cre-lox* mediated *in planta* gene excision**

To demonstrate the principle of *in planta* inducible *cre/lox*-mediated gene excision in *cis*, a
 20 construct was prepared which contained a plant regulatable *inlscre* transcriptional unit adjacent to the *nptII* marker gene. As both genes are within the region of DNA bound by *loxP*, premature expression of *nlscre* in callus culture would lead to excision of the *nptII* gene before the selection of transgenic tissue was completed. To avoid this, the *inlscre* gene was expressed from the *rbcS 1a* promoter which had low activity in callus culture, and high
 25 activity in regenerating or regenerated tissues, organs or organisms. Sequences contained within the 1.7 kb *rbcS 1a* promoter fragment were previously shown to confer light-inducible expression on a heterologous gene in tobacco (Donald and Cashmore, 1990).

30

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 46 -

Preliminary experiments showed that no GUS activity could be detected when a construct containing the *gusA* gene driven by the *rbcS 1a* promoter and polyadenylation signals (*rbcS 1a* 3' end) was introduced into tobacco by *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation of leaf discs and subsequent regeneration in the dark for up to 3 weeks. In contrast, GUS expression
5 was apparent in a similar experiment conducted in parallel, wherein a 35S promoter-driven *gusA-nos3'* construct was introduced into plant cells (data not shown).

Furthermore, as *inlscre* had the least activity of the three *cre* genes tested in the protoplast experiments (Table 1), the inventors considered that use of this gene as source of *inlscre* would
10 provide an even tighter control of *inlscre* expression *in planta*.

The T-DNA region of the plasmid construct pBS229 (Figure 1B), was introduced into tobacco using *Agrobacterium*-mediated plant transformation procedures as described above. Since the activity of the *rbcS 1a* promoter is light-inducible (Donald and Cashmore, 1990), *inlscre*
15 expression was reduced until desired, by regenerating transgenic ntBS229 tissue initially in the dark, in the presence of kanamycin. This procedure avoided premature *nptII* excision. After two weeks, calli were transferred to media lacking kanamycin, and regeneration continued under normal light conditions.

20

EXAMPLE 7

Regeneration of plants free of the *nptII* gene

After three days in the light, small pieces of callus with developing shoots were removed and assayed for GUS expression by staining with X-gluc. A proportion of the tested shoots
25 stained blue (Figure 2), indicating expression of the GUS gene therein. These data suggest that excision of the DNA segment flanked by *loxP* had occurred in the transformed, regenerating shoots, thereby reconstituting the Sc4-GUS transcriptional unit (Figure 1A).

One month after continued regeneration in the light without kanamycin selection, leaves were
30 taken from eighteen ntBS229 plants and stained for GUS activity. Five plants showed GUS

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

activity in tissues for which Sc4 promoter-driven GUS expression is normal (not shown).

A young leaf and an old leaf were taken from each of the eighteen ntBS229 GUS⁺ plants and from one GUS⁻ plant and assayed for *nptII* activity. All Gus⁺ and Gus⁻ leaves tested had high *nptII* activity levels, with the exception of one leaf from plant ntBS229-4 (Figure 3A).

DNA was also extracted from the leaf tissue for PCR analysis, to determine whether excision had occurred. The rationale of this approach is outlined in Figure 4a.

10 Using DNA obtained from ntBS229 plants prior to *cre/lox*-mediated recombination as template, PCR with primer combinations B+C and with D+E was calculated to produce amplification products of 0.72 kb and 1.1 kb in length, respectively (Figure 4a, panel A). In contrast, no amplification products should be synthesised in PCR reactions using ntBS229 DNA isolated from plant material in which *cre/lox*-mediated recombination has occurred.

15 This is because *cre/lox*-mediated excision of the *nptII* gene from genomic DNA prevents primer B from hybridising thereto (Figure 4a, panel B).

Using DNA obtained from ntBS229 plants after *cre/lox*-mediated recombination has occurred as a template for PCR, the primer combination A+C was calculated to produce an amplification product of 0.42 kb in length (Figure 4a, panel B). In contrast, the same primer pair was predicted to produce an amplification product of ~4.5 kb in length, using DNA from ntBS229 plants in which no recombination has occurred (Figure 4a, panel A).

As shown in Figure 4b, amplification products of several ntBS229 T₀ leaf DNAs, of 0.72 kb, 1.1 kb and 0.42 kb in length, were obtained using the primer combinations B+C, D+E and A+C, respectively. These observations are consistent with the presence of both recombined and unrecombined pBS229 T-DNA constructs in the plant genomes.

In contrast, the ntBS229-4 regenerant which had significantly lower *nptII* activity contained only the excised construct, evident by the amplification of DNA of 0.42 kb in length only

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 48 -

when primers A+C were used and no products when primers B+C or D+E were used (Figure 4b).

Thus 9/10 leaves from five T₀ tobacco plants analysed were both GUS⁺, *nptII*⁺ and had a mixture of recombined and unrecombined pBS229 T-DNA constructs in their genomes. These plants were chimeric.

EXAMPLE 8

10 Excision of the *nptII* gene from the plant genome of T₀ regenerants

Plants were regenerated from leaf discs of one chimeric GUS⁺*nptII*⁺ T₀ tobacco plant, designated ntBS229-4. Thirteen plants, regenerated from six leaves, were assayed for both the GUS and *nptII* phenotype, and were subjected to PCR analysis of extracted DNA.

15

The regenerated plants were all GUS⁺ with expression evident in all tissues expected for Sc4 promoter-driven expression (data not shown).

PCR analysis of DNA extracted from these plants using primer combination A+C showed
20 a product of 420 bp in all plants, while with primer combination B+C, a PCR product was seen only with DNA from plant #6, of 0.72 kb in length. The absence of any detectable amplification product obtained using primer pair B+C in 12/13 regenerants indicates that the level of cre/*lox*-mediated excision had increased in the ntBS229-4 regenerants compared to the parent ntBS229-4 plant. Furthermore, the cycle of tissue culture including regeneration
25 employed was successful in reducing the frequency of chimeric plants produced.

NptII activity in 12/13 regenerated plants, was only slightly above background, however plant #6 had *nptII* activity levels characteristic of the chimeric parent ntBS229-4, from which it was derived (Figure 3B). The background *nptII* activity levels in the 12 regenerants is indicative
30 of residual *nptII* enzyme levels produced in cells prior to the excision of the *nptII*

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 49 -

transcriptional unit from the genome.

To verify that *cre/lox*-mediated recombination had occurred in the regenerants, the 420 bp amplification product obtained from one of the regenerants using primers A+C was cloned and five independent clones subjected to DNA sequencing. The data (not shown) indicated that the expected *cre/lox*-mediated recombination event had indeed occurred.

Plants were similarly regenerated from three other *GUS*⁺*nptII*⁺ T₀ tobaccos, ntBS229-8, -17 and -20. In comparison to plant ntBS229-4, where 12/13 regenerants were *GUS*⁺*nptII*⁺, 4/18, 1/18 and 4/18 regenerants from ntBS229-8, -17 and -20 were *GUS*⁺*nptII*⁺, respectively.

In a second experiment involving *in planta cre/lox*-mediated gene excision, the T-DNA regions of plasmids pBS229 (Figure 1B), pBS266 and pBS267 (Figure 5) were separately introduced into tobacco. The procedure used was as described above in Example 6 and 7, except that in this experiment transgenic tissue was regenerated in the light. T₀ tobacco plants were generated for each construct, and seed collected from these plants. Seeds were germinated, and T₁ seedlings analysed for GUS phenotype, *nptII* enzymatic activity and PCR analysis of extracted leaf DNA as described above in Example 7 and 8. The results of this analysis are shown in Table 2. It was found that three out of nine ntBS229 T₁ tobacco lines were *GUS*⁺*nptII*⁺, while with the nine ntBS266 and ntBS267 T₁ lines analysed, all 5 *GUS*⁺ lines in each case were also *nptII*⁺.

TABLE 2

GUS phenotype and *nptII* genotype of T₁ tobacco plants

Source of T-DNA	T ₁ , <i>GUS</i> ⁺ <i>nptII</i> ⁻	T ₁ , <i>GUS</i> ⁺ <i>nptII</i> ⁺	T ₁ , <i>GUS</i> ⁻ <i>nptII</i> ⁺
pBS229	3/9 ^{a,b}	1/9	5/9
pBS266	0/9 ^c	5/9	4/9
pBS267	0/9	5/9	4/9

a: numbers in the table refer to the number of lines with the indicated phenotype and

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 50 -

genotype, expressed as a proportion of the total number of T₁ lines analysed in each instance; the word "line" is used here to indicate lineage with the corresponding T₀ plant.

- b: For each T₁ line, a minimum of 30 plants was scored for GUS phenotype by staining with X-gluc. To determine the NptII phenotype, *nptII* enzymatic assays were performed on at least 20 GUS⁺ T₁ plants for each construct; for each T₁ line, DNA from 2-3 GUS⁺ plants was then extracted and subjected to PCR analysis, to establish the *nptII* genotype.
- 10 c: PCR analysis of extracted DNA was not performed with ntBS266 T₁ tobacco lines.

In a third *in planta* cre/lox-mediated gene excision experiment, the T-DNA region of pBS229 was introduced into *Solanum tuberosum* cultivar Atlantic (potato) by *Agrobacterium*-mediated plant transformation (Peter Waterhouse, unpublished). 34 T₀ plants were regenerated and stained with X-gluc to determine the GUS phenotype. Two plants stained blue with X-gluc, indicating that cre/lox-mediated excision had occurred to produce a transcriptionally active *gusA* cassette (see Figure 1). Plants are regenerated from tissue explants of the GUS⁺ stBS229 plants, and the regenerants characterised for GUS phenotype, *nptII* enzymatic assay and PCR analysis of extracted DNA as described above in Example 7 and 8.

20

EXAMPLE 9

Transformation *in planta* using a hormone gene for selection of transformed tissue.

To demonstrate the principle of *in planta* selection of transformed tissue using a hormone gene, a construct was prepared which contained an *ipt* coding region and *ipt* 3' polyadenylation sequence from the *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* pTiAch5 T-DNA (Heidekamp *et al.*, 1983) inserted downstream of an enhanced 35S promoter and TMV 5' untranslated leader region (Goelet *et al.*, 1982) to confer strong constitutive *in planta* expression of isopentenyl transferase. In order to conduct *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation of plant

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 51 -

cells, the 35S-TMV5'-*ipt-ipt3'*-*nos3'* gene from pRDF10072 was inserted into the binary vector pIG121-Hm (Hiei *et al.*, 1994) to create pRDF10086 (Figure 6). pRDF10086 and pIG121-Hm were separately introduced into *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* strain AGL1 (Lazo *et al.*, 1991). Cultures of AGL1/pRDF10086 and AGL1/pIG121-Hm were grown in the presence of 20 μ M acetosyringone to induce *vir* gene expression, the cells harvested by centrifugation and concentrated 25-fold by resuspension of the cells in a small volume of sterile water. The bacterial suspensions were inoculated into stems of 6-week old tobacco plants (*Nicotiana tabacum* cv. Samsun NN) using a 23G needle attached to a syringe to puncture the stems. Plants were kept in the greenhouse at 23°C daytime temperature for 3 days and then transferred to a 27°C daytime/ 18°C nighttime regime in the greenhouse. Galls appeared on plants 3 weeks after inoculation with AGL1/pRDF10086, after which time the plants were decapitated. No galls appeared on plants inoculated with AGL1/pIG121-Hm. Shoot primordia were visible on the surface of galls 5 weeks after inoculation and continued to develop and grow into shoots up to 10 cm long by 9 weeks after inoculation (Figure 10,11,12). Many of the shoots were white to pale green in colour, had thickened stems and leaves, and showed loss of apical dominance, all typical symptoms of overexpression of cytokinin hormones in plant tissues. Some white or pale green shoots gave rise to leaves or parts of leaves that were (normal) green in colour.

20

EXAMPLE 10

Analysis of tissues arising after *Agrobacterium*-mediated transfer of an *ipt* gene

The T-DNA of pRDF10086 contains not only the *ipt* gene but also a *nptII* gene and a *gusA* gene (Figure 6) driven by *nos* and 35S promoters, respectively, that can be used for detection of transformed plant tissue by virtue of expression of neomycin phosphotransferase (Npt) and β -Glucuronidase (Gus) enzyme activities. Some galls, shoots and leaves that arose on tobacco plants inoculated with AGL1/pRDF10086 were analysed for Npt enzyme activity (McDonnell *et al.*, 1987) and Gus activity by histochemical staining (Jefferson *et al.*, 1987). Slices of gall tissue contained some Gus-positive zones in predominantly Gus-negative areas (data not

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 52 -

shown). When shoots were analysed for Npt activity, 6/17 were Npt-positive (Figure 9). Three of the Npt⁺ shoots were also Gus-positive. When leaves that were part green and part albino were stained for Gus activity, the albino areas were strongly Gus-positive while the green areas were Gus-negative, indicating inactivation of the *gusA* gene in the green zones, and suggesting that selection was operating against high level Gus and/or Ipt expression in some transformed tissues.

EXAMPLE 11

Description of selection of transformed plant tissue using an excisable hormone gene

Transformed shoots that are overexpressing the *ipt* gene are often phenotypically abnormal (eg see above) and are difficult to root (Smigocki and Owens, 1988). To obtain relatively normal tissues and whole plants from the *ipt*-transformed shoots, it is necessary to either inactivate or remove the *ipt* gene. One way this could be achieved is to use *in planta* inducible cre/lox-mediated gene excision in *cis*, with the *ipt* gene lying within the region of DNA bound by two *lox* sites, along with the *inlscre* gene. The genetic construct would normally contain a gene or genes, within the T-DNA but not within the region excised upon cre activation, for introduction into plant cells.

An example of such a genetic construct, presently under construction, is represented schematically in Figure 8. A binary vector, pRDF10543, has been constructed as shown schematically in Figure 7. This binary vector contains *npt* and *oxy* genes in addition to the Sc4-*lox-lox-intronus-nos3'* cassette from pRDF10501. Two genes are inserted into pRDF10543, namely a 35S-*ipt-ipt3'* gene from pRDF10072 and an *ssu-inlscre-ssu3'* gene from prbcS-inlscre. Both are inserted between the *lox* recombination sites and are therefore be excised upon cre activation. The 35S-*ipt* gene functions in much the same way as demonstrated previously (Example 9) for the selection of transformed plant tissue. Sometime during or after formation of a shoot or other organised tissue resulting from *Agrobacterium*-mediated transfer of the genetic construct, expression of cre activity is induced, resulting in

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

excision of the genes between the *lox* sites. The excisable cassette of the genetic construct is flanked by an Sc4 promoter on one side and a promoterless *intron**gusA-nos3'* gene on the other side, such that *inlscre*-mediated excision of the excisable cassette results in juxtaposition of the Sc4 promoter to the *gus* gene, allowing expression of β -Glucuronidase enzyme.

5 Activation of the *gus* gene is therefore an indicator of *cre/lox*-mediated excision. The genetic construct also contains *nptII* and *oxy* genes, conferring neomycin phosphotransferase (Npt) activity and resistance to the herbicide bromoxynil, respectively.

This genetic construct is introduced into *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*, and the resultant cells

10 used to inoculate stems of tobacco plants as described earlier for AGL1/pRDF10086. Shoots and leaves that form from galls that grow at the inoculated sites are analysed for β -Glucuronidase and Npt enzyme activity and for survival after application of the herbicide bromoxynil (Rhône-Poulenc). Presence of either enzyme activity or resistance to bromoxynil indicates transformation of the plant tissues analysed. The presence of β -Glucuronidase

15 enzyme activity indicates that excision of the excisable cassette has occurred in the transformed plant tissue. Excision of the *ipt* gene from such tissues results in a relatively normal phenotype of leaves and stems, namely greener leaves and stems with less thickening associated with overexpression of cytokinin hormones, compared to tissues retaining the *ipt* gene. Relatively normal looking, Gus-positive shoots are chosen for molecular analysis to

20 demonstrate the presence of a reconstituted Sc4-*gusA-nos3'* gene and to test for the presence and activity of the *nptII* and *oxy* genes. Shoots which show the presence of a reconstituted *gus* gene are allowed to flower and set seed, and progeny plants are analysed for segregation and activity of the *nptII*, *gus* and *oxy* genes. A Mendelian pattern of inheritance of one or more of these genes demonstrates that the chosen shoots were stably transformed by the

25 genetic construct with subsequent excision of the *ipt* and *inlscre* genes.

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

15 EQUIVALENTS

Those skilled in the art will appreciate that the invention described herein is susceptible to variations and modifications other than those specifically described. It is to be understood that the invention includes all such variations and modifications. The invention also includes all 20 of the steps, features, compositions and compounds referred to in this specification, individually or collectively, and any and all combinations or any two or more of said steps or features.

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPT.)

REFERENCES

1. Abremski *et al* (1983) *Cell* 32, 1301-1311
- 5 2. An *et al.* (1985) *EMBO J.* 4:277-284.
3. Armstrong, C.L., Peterson, W.L., Buchholz, W.G., Bowen, B.A. Sulc, S.L. (1990). *Plant Cell Reports* 9, 335-339.
4. Boevink, P. *et al* (1995) *Virology* 207, 354-361
5. Christou, P., McCabe, D.E., Swain, W.F. (1988). *Plant Physiol* 87, 671-674.
- 10 6. Crossway *et al.* (1986) *Mol. Gen. Genet.* 202,179-185.
7. Dale, E.C., & Ow, D.W. (1991) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 88, 10558-10562
8. de Feyter, R. *et al* (1997) Manuscript in preparation
9. Donald, R.G.K. & Cashmore, A.R. (1990) *EMBO J.* 9, 1717-1726
10. Ellis, J.G. *et al* (1987) *EMBO J.* 6, 11-16
- 15 11. Fromm *et al.* (1985) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. (USA)* 82,5824-5828.
12. Goelet, P. *et al* (1982) *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 79, 5818-5822
13. Golic, K.G. *et al* (1989) *Cell* 59, 499-509
14. Graham, M.W. & Larkin, P.J. (1995) *Transgenic Research* 4, 324-331
15. Haseloff, J. and Gerlach, W.L. (1988). *Nature* 334, 586-594.
- 20 16. Heidekamp, F. *et al* (1983) *Nucl Acids Res.* 11, 6211-6223
17. Herrera-Estrella *et al.* (1983a) *Nature* 303, 209-213.
18. Herrera-Estrella *et al.* (1983b) *EMBO J.* 2, 987-995.
19. Herrera-Estrella *et al.* (1985) *In: Plant Genetic Engineering*, Cambridge University Press, NY, pp 63-93.
- 25 20. Hiei, Y. *et al* (1994) *Plant J.* 6, 271-282
21. Jefferson, R.A. *et al* (1987) *EMBO J.* 6, 3901-3907
22. Kalderon, D. *et al* (1984) *Cell* 39, 499-509
23. Kay, R. *et al* (1987) *Science* 236, 1299-1302
24. Krens, F.A., Molendijk, L., Wullems, G.J. and Schilperoort, R.A. (1982).
30 *Nature* 296, 72-74.

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

25. Landsmann, J. *et al* (1986) *Nature* 324, 166-168
26. Landsmann, J. *et al* (1989) *Mol. Gen. Genet.* 214, 68-73
27. Lazo, G.R. *et al* (1991) *Bio/Technology* 9, 963-967
28. Lloyd, A.M. & Davis, R.W. (1994) *Mol. Gen. Genet.* 242, 653-657
- 5 29. Lyznik, L.A. *et al* (1995) *The Plant Journal* 8, 177-186
30. Ma, Q-H *et al* (1997) Specific expression of isopentenyl transferase gene in transgenic tobacco seed controlled by a pea vicilin promoter *Aust. J. Plant Physiol* (submitted for publication)
31. Matzke, M.A. & Matzke A.J.M. (1995) *Plant Physiol.* 107, 679-68
- 10 32. McDonnell, R.E. *et al* (1987) *Plant Mol. Biol. Rep.* 5, 380-386
33. Murashige, T. & Skoog, F. (1962) *Physiol. Plant.* 15, 473-497
34. O'Gorman, S. *et al* (1991) *Science* 251, 1351-1355
35. Pazkowski *et al.* (1984) *EMBO J.* 3, 2717-2722.
36. Russell, S.H. *et al* (1992) *Mol. Gen. Genet.* 234, 49-59
- 15 37. Sanger, F. *et al* (1977) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 74, 5463-5467
38. Sambrook, J. *et al* (1989) *In: Molecular Cloning - A laboratory manual* (second edition), Cold Spring Harbor Lab. press
39. Smigocki, A.C. and Owens, L.D. (1988) *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 85, 5131-5135
40. Stalker, D.M. *et al* (1988) *J. Biol Chem.* 263, 6310-6314
- 20 41. Tabe, L.M. *et al* (1995) *J. Anim. Sci.* 73, 2752-2759
42. Vieira, J. & Messing, J. (1987) *Methods Enzymol.* 153, 3-11

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

CLAIMS:

1. A genetic construct comprising a first expression cassette which comprises:
 - (i) a recombinase genetic unit which comprises a genetic sequence which encodes
5 a site-specific recombinase placed upstream of a terminator sequence and operably under the control of a first promoter; and
 - (ii) a transgene unit which comprises one or more expressable transgenes as
hereinbefore defined, placed operably under the control of one or more second promoter sequences;
- 10 wherein said recombinase genetic unit and said transgene unit are linked and wherein said first expression cassette is flanked by two recombination loci capable of binding to said site-specific recombinase.
2. The genetic construct according to claim 1 wherein the genetic sequence which
15 encodes the site-specific recombinase is the *cre* gene and the recombination loci are *lox* sites or functionally-equivalent homologues, analogues or derivatives thereof.
3. The genetic construct according to claim 1 wherein the genetic sequence which
encodes the site-specific recombinase is the *flp* gene and the recombination loci are *frt* sites
20 or functionally-equivalent homologues, analogues or derivatives thereof.
4. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 3 wherein the transgene encodes a ribozyme molecule.
- 25 5. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 3 wherein the transgene encodes an antisense molecule.
6. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 3 wherein the transgene encodes a co-suppression molecule.

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 58 -

7. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 3 wherein the transgene is a structural gene.
8. The genetic construct according to claim 7 wherein the structural gene sequence is
5 a selectable marker gene, a reporter gene, a hormone gene, hormone-encoding gene, hormone-biosynthesis gene or a genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels.
9. The genetic construct according to claim 8 wherein the selectable marker gene is
10 selected from the list comprising the antibiotic resistance genes which confer resistance to ampicillin, Claforan, gentamycin, G-418, hygromycin, kanamycin, neomycin, spectinomycin, tetracycline or a derivative or related compound thereto.
10. The genetic construct according to claim 8 wherein the selectable marker gene is
15 selected from the list of herbicide-resistance genes which encode polypeptides which confer resistance to any one or more of atrazine, Basta, Bialophos, bromoxynil, Buctril, 2,4-D, glyphosate, phosphinothricin, sulphonylurea, or a derivative or related compound thereto.
11. The genetic construct according to claim 8 wherein the reporter gene is selected from
20 the list comprising chloramphenicol acetyltransferase, β -glucuronidase, luciferase, and green fluorescent protein genes.
12. The genetic construct according to claim 8 wherein the structural gene encodes a polypeptide or enzyme which catalyses at least one step leading to the synthesis of a cytokinin
25 or auxin or other plant growth regulator, or regulates the production or metabolism of said cytokinin, auxin or other plant growth regulator.
13. The genetic construct according to claim 12 wherein the structural gene is *ipt*.
- 30 14. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 13, wherein the genetic

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 59 -

construct further comprises a modification to reduce or prevent recombinase expression in a prokaryote cell.

15. The genetic construct according to claim 14 wherein the modification is the insertion
5 of an intron sequence to disrupt expression of the recombinase genetic unit absent removal of said intron sequence.

16. The genetic construct according to claim 14 wherein the modification is the insertion of an intron sequence in the coding region of the recombinase gene.

10

17. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 16 wherein the first and second promoters are capable of conferring expression of the structural gene and site-specific recombinase gene in a eukaryote cell.

15 18. The genetic construct according to claim 17 wherein the eukaryote is a plant.

19. The genetic construct according to claim 18 wherein the plant is selected from the list comprising stolon-bearing or tuber-bearing plants such as potatoes, sweet potatoes, jerusalem artichoke, taro or yams, fibre or wood tree crops such as *Eucalyptus ssp.* or *Pinus ssp.*,
20 aspen, ornamental plants such as gerberas, chrysanthemum, orchids, lilies, roses, fuschias, azaleas carnations, camellias or gardenias, citrus crops such as oranges, lemons, grapefruit, tangerines or limes, fruit tress such as apples or pears, berry fruits such as strawberry, raspberry, loganberry or blackberry, tropical crops such as sugarcane, tobacco, bananas, plantain or pineapples or asparagus.

25

20. The genetic construct according to claim 18 wherein the plant is a solanaceous plant.

21. The genetic construct according to claim 20 wherein the plant is tobacco or potato.

30 22. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 17 wherein the first and/or

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 60 -

second promoter is selected from the list comprising constitutive promoters, seed-specific promoters, floral-specific promoters, anther-specific promoters, tapetum-specific promoters, root-specific promoters, leaf-specific promoters, stem-specific promoters, meristem-specific promoters, light-inducible promoters, metal-inducible promoters, heat-shock promoters,
5 wound-inducible and stress-inducible promoters.

23. The genetic construct according to claim 22 wherein the first and/or second promoters are selected from the list comprising CaMV 35S, *NOS*, *OCS*, *Sc1*, *Sc4* and *rbcS*, amongst others.

10

24. The genetic construct according to claims 22 or 23 wherein the first promoter is an inducible promoter.

25. The genetic construct according to claim 24 wherein the inducible promoter is the *rbcS*
15 promoter.

26. The genetic construct according to claim 25 wherein the first promoter is the *Arabidopsis thaliana rbcS 1a* promoter.

20 27. The genetic construct according to claim 23 wherein the first promoter is the CaMV 35S promoter.

28. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 23 to 27 wherein the second promoter is the *Sc4* promoter.

25

29. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 28 wherein the first promoter switches on expression of the site-specific recombinase following the commencement of expression of the structural gene sequence.

30 30. The genetic construct according to claim 29 wherein the first promoter is the

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

Arabidopsis thaliana rbcS 1a promoter and the second promoter is the CaMV 35S promoter or the Sc4 promoter.

31. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 30 wherein the recombinase
5 genetic unit further comprises a nucleotide sequence which encodes a nuclear localisation signal fused in-frame to the coding region of the recombinase gene.

32. The genetic construct according to claim 31 wherein the nuclear localisation signal is the SV40 T-antigen type nuclear localisation signal.

10

33. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 32 wherein the first expression cassette flanked by recombination loci is inserted into a second expression cassette such that excision of the first expression cassette from the second expression cassette alters expression of the second expression cassette.

15

34. The genetic construct according to claim 33 wherein the second expression cassette comprises one or more expressable transgenes selected from the list comprising structural genes, ribozymes, antisense molecules or co-suppression molecules and wherein each of said transgenes is placed operably under the control of a promoter sequence.

20

35. The genetic construct according to claim 34 wherein the transgene of the second expression cassette is a structural gene.

36. The genetic construct according to claim 35 wherein the structural gene is a reporter
25 gene.

37. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 33 to 36 wherein the transgene of the second expression cassette is expressed following excision of the first expression cassette.

30

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

38. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 32 further comprising an expressable transgene operably connected to a promoter sequence wherein said expressable transgene is juxtaposed to the outside of the region flanked by the recombination loci and separated from the adjacent recombination loci by a spacer region of at least 2 nucleotides in
5 length.

39. The genetic construct according to claim 38 wherein the expressible gene encodes a functional enzyme, polypeptide, ribozyme, antisense, co-suppression molecule or other RNA molecule.

10

40. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 39 further comprising one or more left border and/or right border sequences or other T-DNA sequences to facilitate its *in vivo* insertion into plant chromosomal DNA.

15 41. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 40 when used to transform a cell.

42. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 40 when used to delete, excise or otherwise remove a transgene from a transformed cell.

20

43. A method of removing a transgene from a cell transformed with the genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 40, said method comprising expressing the recombinase genetic unit of said genetic construct for a time and under conditions sufficient for a site-specific recombinase to be expressed and at least excise the first expression cassette of said
25 genetic construct.

44. A method of transiently expressing a transgene in a stably transformed cell, said method comprising:

- (i) stably transforming said cell with the genetic construct according to any one-
30 of claims 1 to 40;

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- (ii) expressing the transgene of the transgene unit in said stably transformed cell;
and
- (iii) expressing the recombinase genetic unit of said genetic construct for a time and under conditions sufficient for a site-specific recombinase to be expressed and at least
5 excise the first expression cassette of said genetic construct.

45. The method according to claims 43 or 44 wherein the transgene is selected from the list comprising structural genes, ribozymes, antisense molecule and co-suppression molecules.

10 46. The method according to claim 45 wherein the expressible transgene is a structural gene selected from the list comprising selectable marker gene, reporter gene, hormone gene, hormone-encoding gene, hormone biosynthesis gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels.

15 47. A method of inducing, suppressing or otherwise altering the expression of a transgene in a cell transformed with the genetic construct according to claim 33, said method comprising expressing the recombinase genetic unit of said genetic construct for a time and under conditions sufficient for a site-specific recombinase to be expressed and at least excise the first expression cassette of said genetic construct.

20

48. A method of producing a transformed cell comprising the steps of:

- (i) transforming a cell with the genetic construct according to any one of claims
1 to 40; and
- (ii) expressing the recombinase genetic unit for a time and under conditions
25 sufficient for expression of the site-specific recombinase encoded by said recombinase genetic unit to occur and result in excision of the transgene of the first expression cassette of said genetic construct or a fragment thereof sufficient to disrupt expression of said transgene.

30 49. The method according to claim 48 wherein the transgene of the first expression

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 64 -

cassette comprises a selectable marker gene and the step of expressing the recombinase genetic unit results in excision of said selectable marker gene or a fragment thereof sufficient to prevent its expression.

- 5 50. The method according to claim 49 wherein the selectable marker gene is selected from the list comprising the antibiotic resistance genes which confer resistance to ampicillin, Claforan, gentamycin, G-418, hygromycin, kanamycin, neomycin, spectinomycin, tetracycline or a derivative or related compound thereto.
- 10 51. The method according to claim 40 wherein the selectable marker gene is selected from the list of herbicide-resistance genes which encode polypeptides which confer resistance to any one or more of atrazine, Basta, Bialophos, bromoxynil, Butril, 2,4-D, glyphosate, phosphinothricin, sulphonylurea, or a derivative or related compound thereto.
- 15 52. A method of producing a transformed plant cell, said method comprising the steps of:
- (i) transforming said cell with the genetic construct according to any one of claims 12 to 40, wherein the structural gene of the first expression cassette is a hormone gene, hormone-encoding gene, hormone-biosynthesis gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels;
- 20 (ii) expressing said structural gene in said transformed cell for a time and under conditions sufficient for said cell to differentiate into the progenitor cells of said organ;
- (iii) expressing the recombinase genetic unit of the genetic construct for a time and under conditions sufficient for expression of the site-specific recombinase encoded by
- 25 said recombinase genetic unit to occur, thereby leading to excision of the structural gene of the first expression cassette or a fragment thereof sufficient to disrupt expression of the structural gene.
53. The method according to claim 52 comprising the additional step of growing the
- 30 differentiated progenitor cell into an organ or whole plant.

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

54. The method according to claim 52 or 53 wherein the cell which is transformed in step (i) is derived from a plant cell line, suspension culture of a plant cell line, tissue culture of a plant cell, or callus.

5 55. The method according to claim 52 or 53 wherein the cell which is transformed in step (i) is derived from a tissue explant selected from the list comprising leaf, stem, root, or seed, amongst others.

56. The method according to claim 52 or 53 wherein the transformation step (i) is carried
10 out *in situ* on a whole plant.

57. The method according to any one of claims 52 to 56 wherein the hormone gene, hormone-encoding gene, hormone-biosynthesis gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels produces a cytokinin or regulates the
15 production or metabolism of a cytokinin when expressed in the plant cell, sufficient to result in adventitious shoot formation.

58. The method according to claim 57 wherein the hormone gene, hormone-encoding gene, hormone-biosynthesis gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable
20 of regulating hormone levels is *ipt* or a homologue, analogue or derivative thereof.

59. The method according to any one of claims 52 to 56 wherein the hormone gene, hormone-encoding gene, hormone-biosynthesis gene or genetic sequence which encodes a polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels produces an auxin or regulates the
25 production or metabolism of an auxin when expressed in the plant cell, sufficient to result in adventitious root formation.

60. The method according to any one of claims 52 to 56 wherein the hormone gene, hormone-encoding gene, hormone-biosynthesis gene or genetic sequence which encodes a
30 polypeptide capable of regulating hormone levels produces a gibberellin or regulates the

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 66 -

production or metabolism of an gibberellin when expressed in the plant cell, sufficient to result in organogenesis.

61. A method of introducing multiple genes into a cell using a single selectable marker
5 gene, said method comprising the steps of:

- (i) transforming said cell with a genetic construct, according to any one of claims 33 to 40 wherein transgene of the first expression cassette is a selectable marker gene;
- (ii) expressing the recombinase gene contained in said genetic construct in said cell or the progeny of said cell; and
- 10 (iii) transforming the cell obtained in step (ii) with a second genetic construct as hereinbefore described, wherein the structural gene of said genetic construct is a selectable marker gene which is substantially the same as the selectable marker gene use in step (i) or a homologue, analogue or a derivative thereof.

15 62. The method according to claim 61 comprising the further step of repeating step (ii) of said method.

63. The method according to claim 62 further comprising repeating the steps defined by claim 61 at least once.

20

64. A cell or organism transformed with the genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 40 or a derivative thereof produced by the removal of the first expression cassette of said genetic construct therefrom.

25 65. The cell or organism according to claim 64 further characterised as a prokaryotic cell.

66. The cell or organism according to claim 64 further characterised as a eukaryotic cell or organism.

30 67. The cell or organism according to claim 64 wherein the eukaryote cell is a plant cell

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

- 67 -

or organism.

68. A cell or organism which comprises a footprint of at least about 30 nucleotides in length derived from the genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 40, wherein said
5 footprint at least comprises one the the recombination loci of said genetic construct.

69. The cell or organism according to claim 68 wherein the plant is selected from the list comprising stolon-bearing or tuber-bearing plants such as potatoes, sweet potatoes, jerusalem artichoke, taro or yams, fibre or wood tree crops such as *Eucalyptus ssp.* or *Pinus ssp.*,
10 aspen, ornamental plants such as gerberas, chrysanthemum, orchids, lilies, roses, fuschias, azaleas carnations, camellias or gardenias, citrus crops such as oranges, lemons, grapefruit, tangerines or limes, fruit tress such as apples or pears, berry fruits such as strawberry, raspberry, loganberry or blackberry, tropical crops such as sugarcane, tobacco, bananas, plantain or pineapples or asparagus, amongst others.

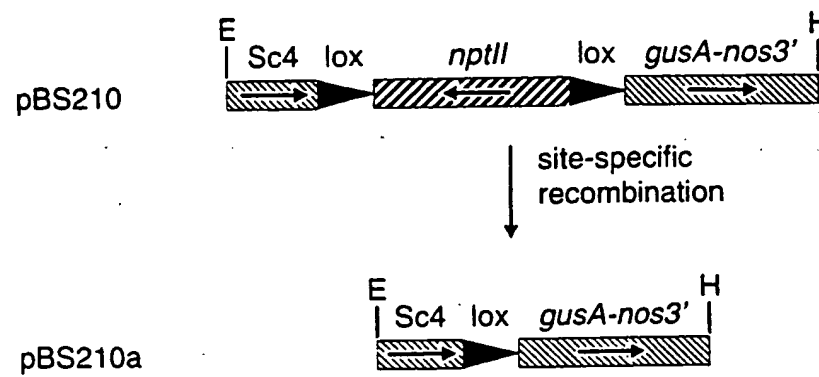
15

70. The genetic construct according to any one of claims 1 to 40 when used to ablate a cell or tissue *in planta*.

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

1/15

A



B

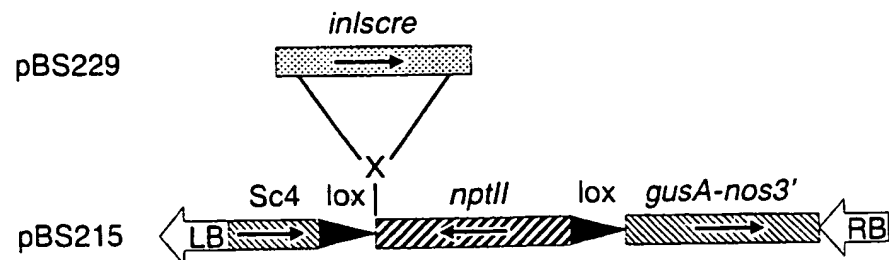


FIGURE 1

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

2/15



FIGURE 2

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

THIS PAGE BLANK

3/15

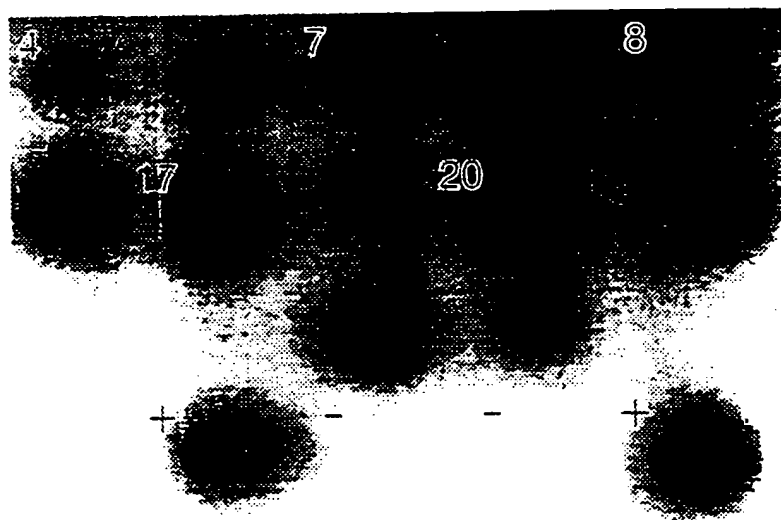


FIGURE 3A

THIS PAGE BLANK (US 10,

4/15

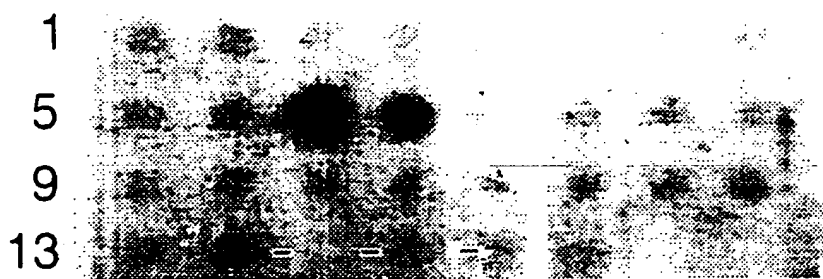


FIGURE 3B

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

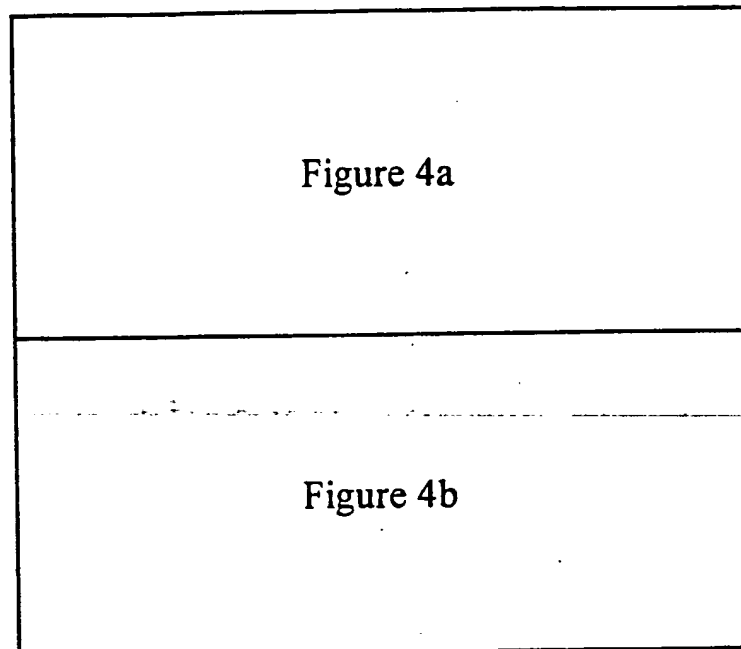


FIGURE 4

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

6/15

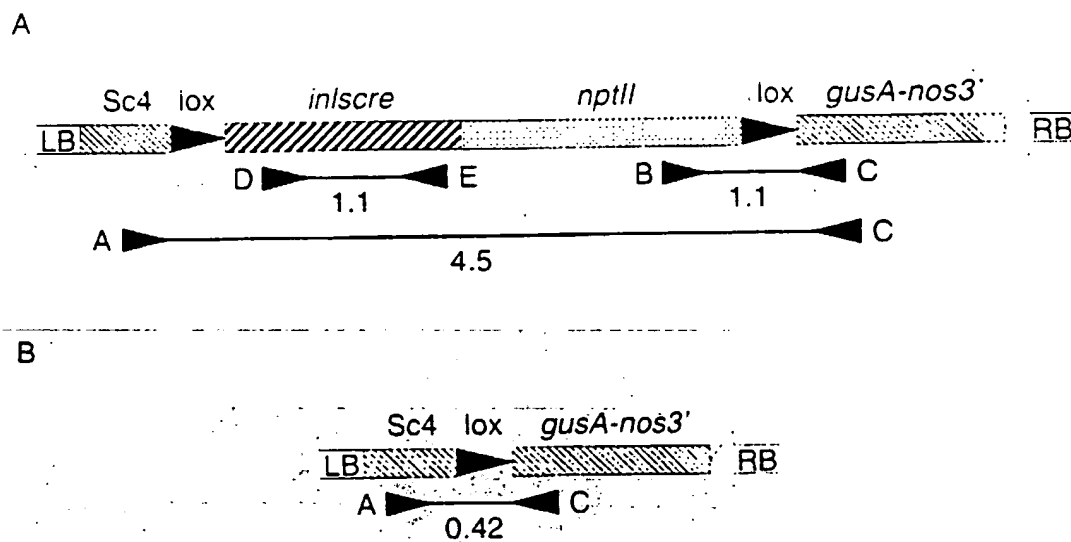


FIGURE 4a

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

7/15

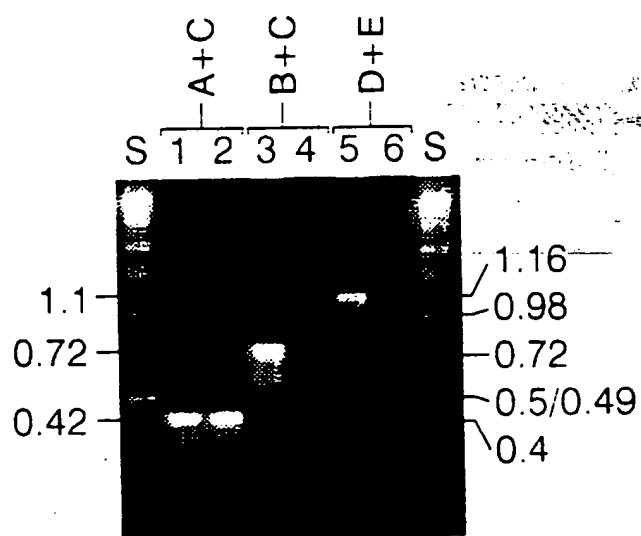


FIGURE 4b

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

(pBS266) pAp1-in/scre
(pBS267) pVic-in/scre

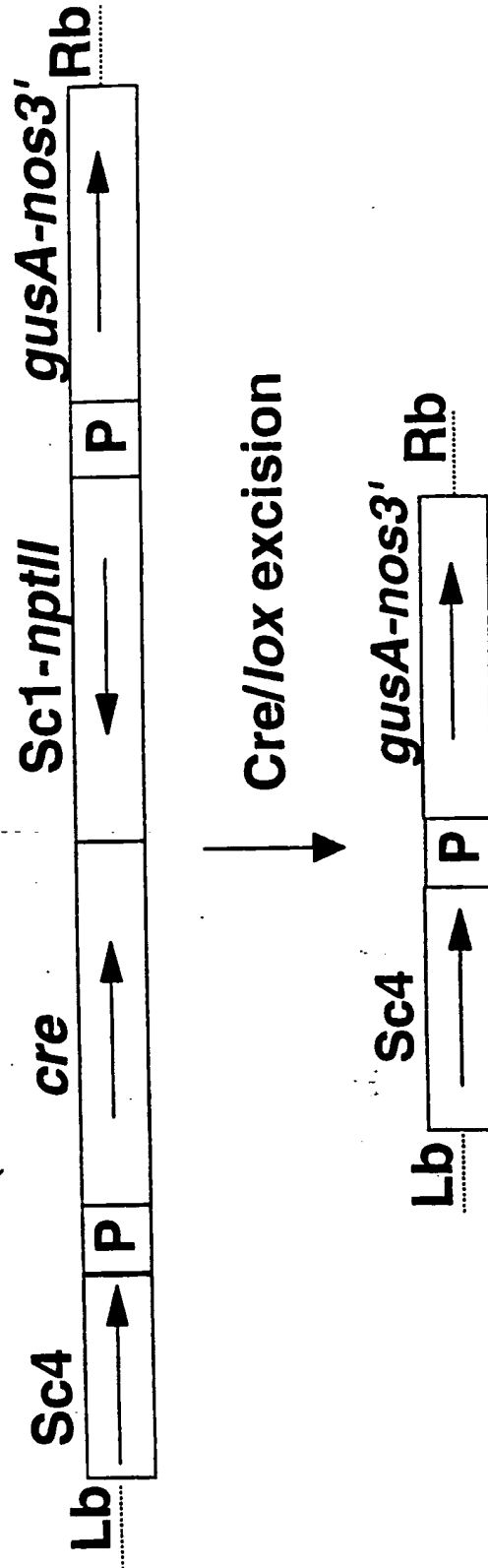


FIGURE 5

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

9/15

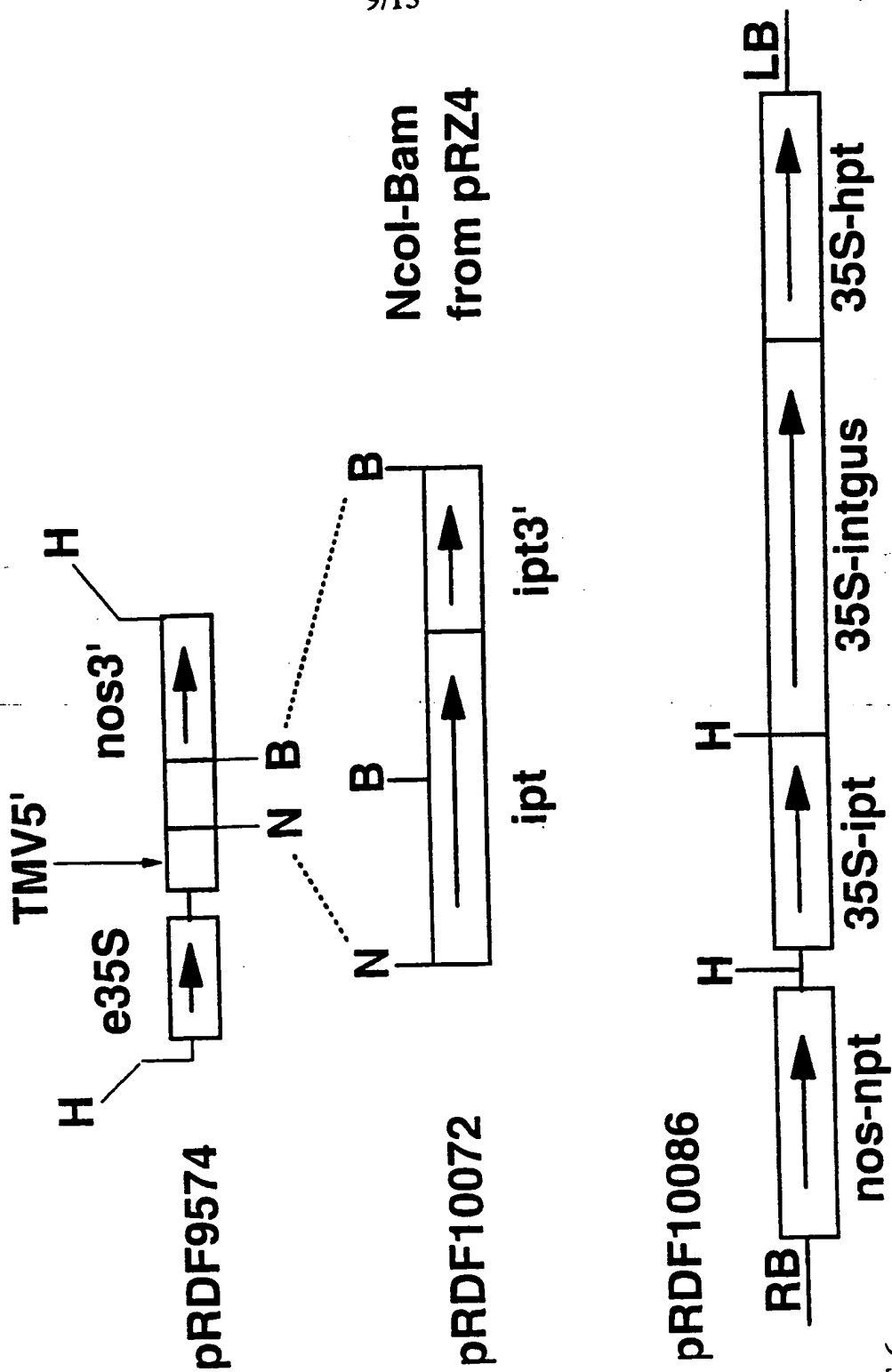


FIGURE 6

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

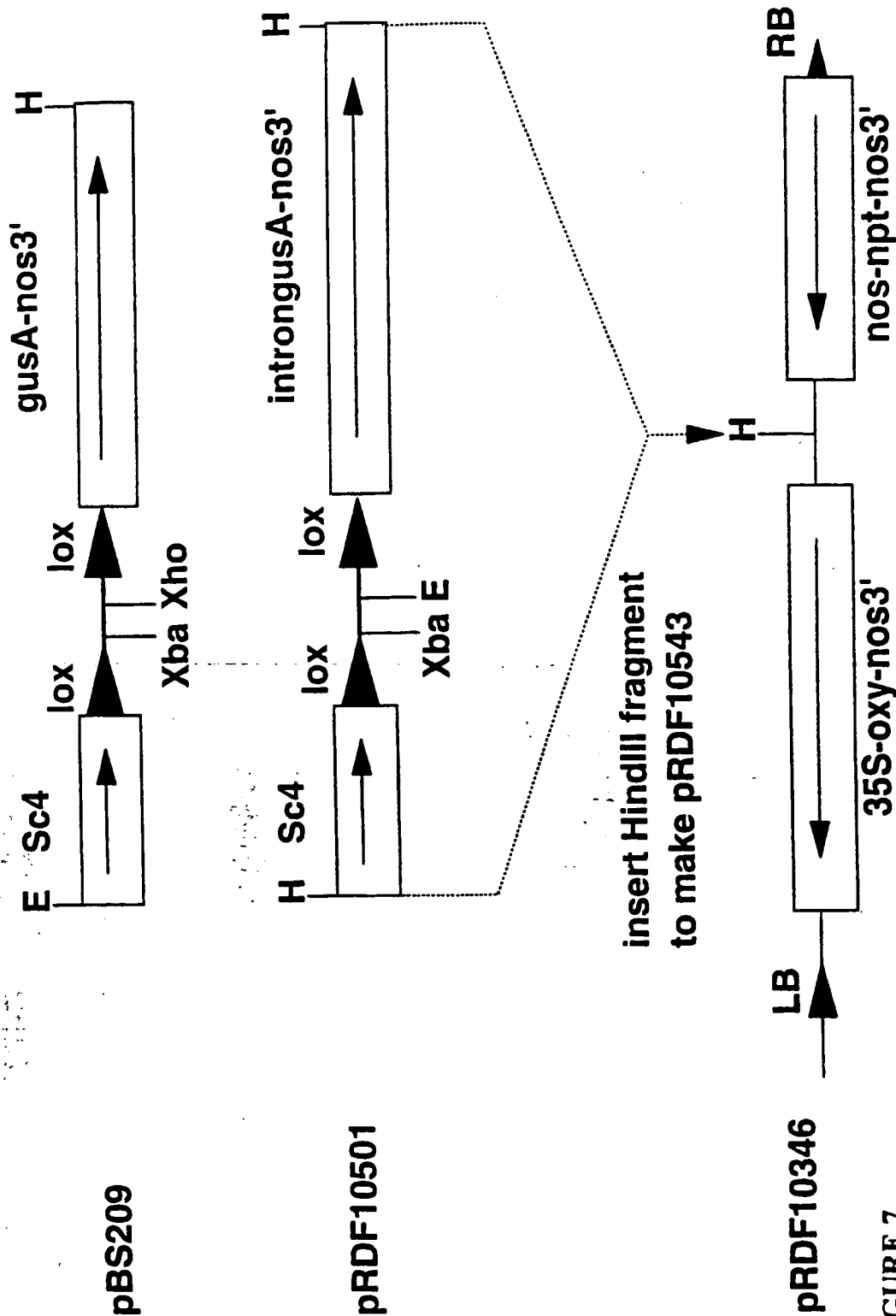


FIGURE 7

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

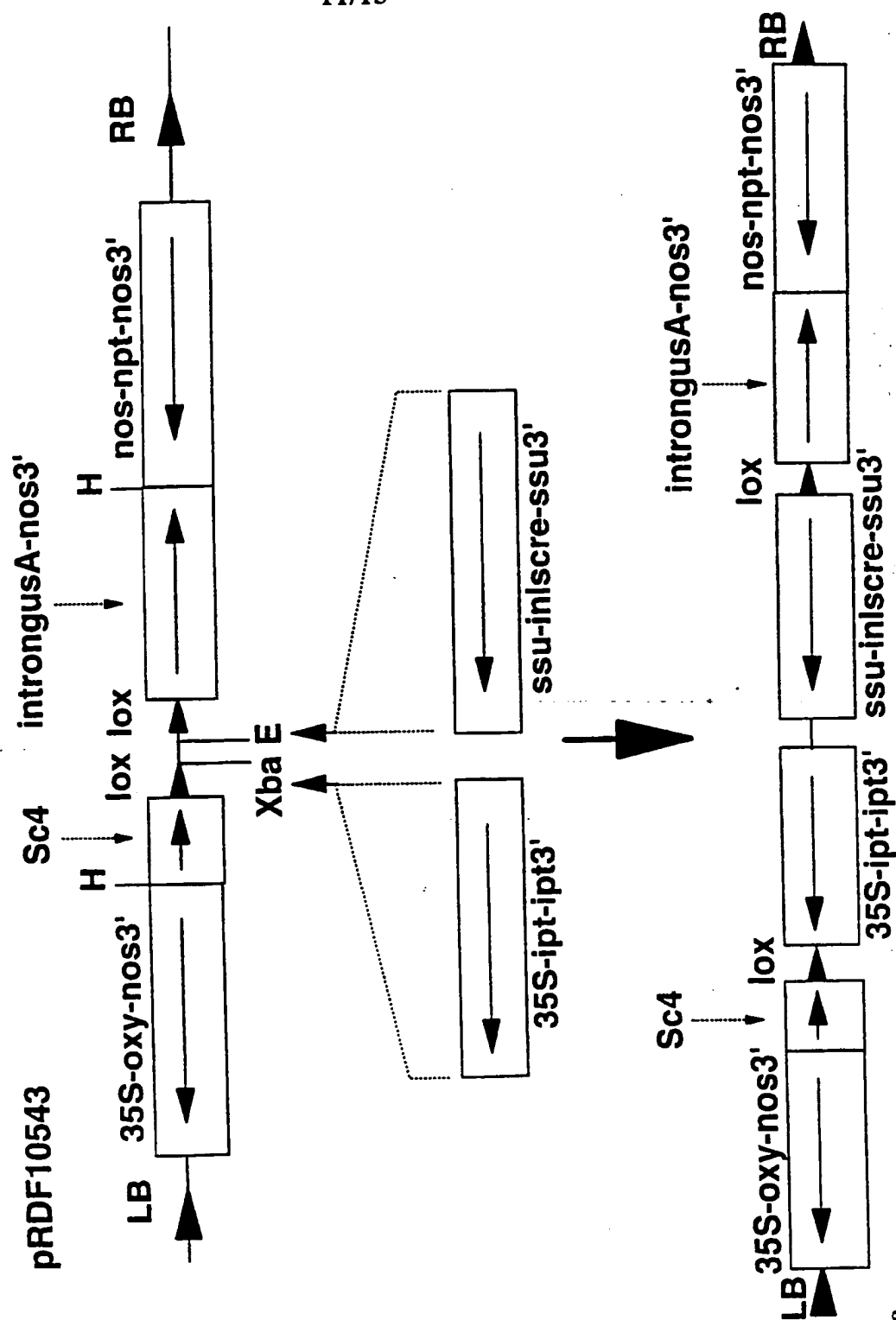
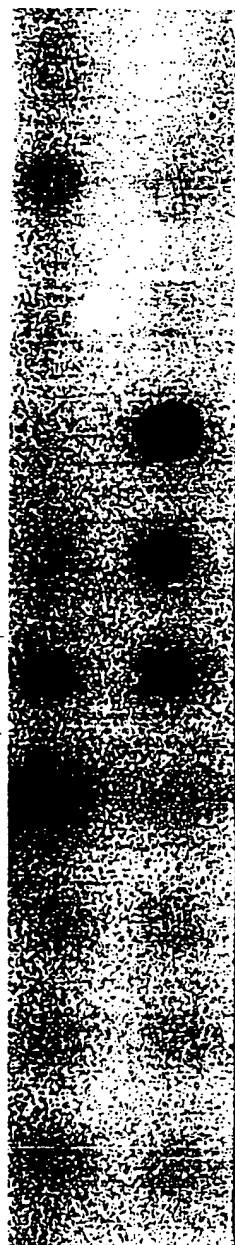


FIGURE 8

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

12/15



Key

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	C	C	

FIGURE 9

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

13/15



FIGURE 10

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

14/15



FIGURE 11

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

15/15



FIGURE 12

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

29 APR 1997
PCT

INDICATIONS RELATING TO A DEPOSITED MICROORGANISM

(PCT Rule 13bis)

A. The indications made below relate to the microorganism referred to in the description on page <u>41</u> line <u>1 to 13</u>	
B. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Name of depositary institution AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT ANALYTICAL LABORATORIES	
Address of depositary institution (including postal code and country) P.O. Box 385 Pymble NSW 2073 AUSTRALIA	
Date of deposit 27 MARCH 1997 (27/03/97)	Accession Number NM97/04988
C. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) This information is continued on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/>	
Plasmid pRDF 10543	
D. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE (if the indications are not for all designated States)	
E. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable)	
The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later (specify the general nature of the indications e.g., "Accession Number of Deposit")	

For receiving Office use only

☐ This sheet was received with the international application

Authorized officer

For International Bureau use only

☒ This sheet was received by the International Bureau on:
29 APR 1997

Authorized officer
B. Morain

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

INDICATIONS RELATING TO A DEPOSITED MICROORGANISM

(PCT Rule 13bis)

<p>A. The indications made below relate to the microorganism referred to in the description on page <u>40</u> line <u>1 to 11</u></p>	
<p>B. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p>	
<p>Name of depositary institution AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT ANALYTICAL LABORATORIES</p>	
<p>Address of depositary institution (including postal code and country): <div style="text-align: center;"> P.O. Box 385 Pymble NSW 2073 AUSTRALIA </div> </p>	
<p>Date of deposit 27 MARCH 1997 (27/03/97)</p>	<p>Accession Number NM97/04989</p>
<p>C. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) This information is continued on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/></p>	
<p>Plasmid pRDF 10086</p>	
<p>D. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE (if the indications are not for all designated States)</p>	
<p>E. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable)</p>	
<p>The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later (specify the general nature of the indications e.g. "Accession Number of Deposit")</p>	

For receiving Office use only	
<input type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received with the international application	
<p>Authorized officer</p>	

For International Bureau use only	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received by the International Bureau on:	
<p>29 APR 1997</p>	
<p>Authorized officer</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Pymble</i></p>	

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

INDICATIONS RELATING TO A DEPOSITED MICROORGANISM

(PCT Rule 13bis)

A. The indications made below relate to the microorganism referred to in the description on page <u>40</u> line <u>1 to 13</u>	
B. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Name of depositary institution <p style="text-align: center;">AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT ANALYTICAL LABORATORIES</p>	
Address of depositary institution including postal code and country <p>P.O. Box 385 Pymble NSW 2073 AUSTRALIA</p>	
Date of deposit <p style="text-align: center;">27 MARCH 1997 (27/03/97)</p>	Accession Number <p style="text-align: center;">NM97/04990</p>
C. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) This information is continued on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/>	
Plasmid pRDF 10072	
D. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE (if the indications are not for all designated States)	
E. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable)	
The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later (specify the general nature of the indications e.g., "Accession Number of Deposit")	

For receiving Office use only	
<input type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received with the international application	
Authorized officer	

For International Bureau use only	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received by the International Bureau on:	
<p>29 APR 1997</p>	
Authorized officer <p style="text-align: center;"><i>B. Morav</i></p>	

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

INDICATIONS RELATING TO A DEPOSITED MICROORGANISM

(PCT Rule 13bis)

A. The indications made below relate to the microorganism referred to in the description on page <u>35</u> line <u>2 to 4</u>	
B. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Name of depositary institution AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT ANALYTICAL LABORATORIES	
Address of depositary institution (including postal code and country) P.O. Box 385 Pymble NSW 2073 AUSTRALIA	
Date of deposit 27 MARCH 1997 (27/03/97)	Accession Number NM97/04991
C. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) This information is continued on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/>	
Plasmid pRDF 9574	
D. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE (if the indications are not for all designated States)	
E. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable)	
The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later (specify the general nature of the indications e.g., "Accession Number of Deposit")	

For receiving Office use only	
<input type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received with the international application	
Authorized officer	

For International Bureau use only	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received by the International Bureau on: 29 APR 1997	
Authorized officer dmu	

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

INDICATIONS RELATING TO A DEPOSITED MICROORGANISM

(PCT Rule 134is)

A. The indications made below relate to the microorganism referred to in the description on page <u>38</u> line <u>17</u>	
B. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Name of depositary institution AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT ANALYTICAL LABORATORIES	
Address of depositary institution (including postal code and country) P.O. Box 385 Pymble NSW 2073 AUSTRALIA	
Date of deposit 27 MARCH 1997 (27/03/97)	Accession Number NM97/04992
C. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) This information is continued on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/>	
Plasmid p35S-CRE	
D. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE (if the indications are not for all Designated States)	
E. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later (specify the general nature of the indications e.g. "Accession Number of Deposit")	
<div>For receiving Office use only</div> <div><input type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received with the international application</div> <div>Authorized officer</div>	<div>For International Bureau use only</div> <div><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received by the International Bureau on: 29 APR 1997</div> <div>Authorized officer <i>Muo</i></div>

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

INDICATIONS RELATING TO A DEPOSITED MICROORGANISM

(PCT Rule 13bis)

<p>A. The indications made below relate to the microorganism referred to in the description on page <u>38</u> line <u>17</u></p>	
<p>B. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p>	
<p>Name of depositary institution AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT ANALYTICAL LABORATORIES</p>	
<p>Address of depositary institution (including postal code and country) <div style="text-align: center;"> P.O. Box 385 Pymble NSW 2073 AUSTRALIA </div> </p>	
<p>Date of deposit 27 MARCH 1997 (27/03/97)</p>	<p>Accession Number NM97/04993</p>
<p>C. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) This information is continued on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/></p>	
<p>Plasmid p35S-NLSCRE</p>	
<p>D. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE (if the indications are not for all designated States)</p>	
<p>E. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable)</p>	
<p>The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later (specify the general nature of the indications e.g., "Accession Number of Deposit")</p>	

For receiving Office use only	
<input type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received with the international application	
<p>Authorized officer</p>	

For International Bureau use only	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received by the International Bureau on:	
<p>29 APR 1997</p>	
<p>Authorized officer</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Bmo</i></p>	


THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

INDICATIONS RELATING TO A DEPOSITED MICROORGANISM

(PCT Rule 13bis)

A. The indications made below relate to the microorganism referred to in the description on page <u>38</u> line <u>17 - 18</u>	
B. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Name of depositary institution AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT ANALYTICAL LABORATORIES	
Address of depositary institution (including postal code and country) P.O. Box 385 Pymble NSW 2073 AUSTRALIA	
Date of deposit 27 MARCH 1997 (27/03/97)	Accession Number NM97/04994
C. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) This information is continued on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/>	
Plasmid p35S - inlscre	
D. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE (if the indications are not for all designated States)	
E. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable)	
The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later (specify the general nature of the indications e.g., "Accession Number of Deposit")	

For receiving Office use only	
<input type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received with the international application	
Authorized officer	

For International Bureau use only	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received by the International Bureau on:	
29 APR 1997	
Authorized officer 	

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

INDICATIONS RELATING TO A DEPOSITED MICROORGANISM

(PCT Rule 13bis)

A. The indications made below relate to the microorganism referred to in the description on page <u>33</u> line <u>12 - 15</u>	
B. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Name of depositary institution <p style="text-align: center;">AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT ANALYTICAL LABORATORIES</p>	
Address of depositary institution (including postal code and country) <p>P.O. Box 385 Pymble NSW 2073 AUSTRALIA</p>	
Date of deposit <p style="text-align: center;">27 MARCH 1997 (27/03/97)</p>	Accession Number <p style="text-align: center;">NM97/04995</p>
C. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) This information is continued on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/>	
<p style="text-align: center;">Plasmid pBS210</p>	
D. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE (if the indications are not for all designated States)	
E. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable)	
<p>The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later (specify the general nature of the indications e.g. "Accession Number of Deposit")</p>	

For receiving Office use only	
<input type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received with the international application	
Authorized officer	

For International Bureau use only	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received by the International Bureau on:	
<p>29 APR 1997</p>	
Authorized officer	

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

INDICATIONS RELATING TO A DEPOSITED MICROORGANISM

(PCT Rule 13bis)

A. The indications made below relate to the microorganism referred to in the description on page <u>33</u> line <u>19 - 21</u>	
B. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Name of depositary institution <p style="text-align: center;">AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT ANALYTICAL LABORATORIES</p>	
Address of depositary institution (including postal code and country) <p style="text-align: center;">P.O. Box 385 Pymble NSW 2073 AUSTRALIA</p>	
Date of deposit <p style="text-align: center;">27 MARCH 1997 (27/03/97)</p>	Accession Number <p style="text-align: center;">NM97/04996</p>
C. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) This information is continued on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/>	
Plasmid pBS229	
D. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE (if the indications are not for all designated States,	
E. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable)	
The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later (specify the general nature of the indications e.g., "Accession Number of Deposit")	

For receiving Office use only	
<input type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received with the international application	
Authorized officer	

For International Bureau use only	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received by the International Bureau on:	
29 APR 1997	
Authorized officer	


THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

INDICATIONS RELATING TO A DEPOSITED MICROORGANISM

(PCT Rule 13bis)

A. The indications made below relate to the microorganism referred to in the description on page <u>39</u> line <u>1 - 12</u>	
B. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Name of depositary institution AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT ANALYTICAL LABORATORIES	
Address of depositary institution (including postal code and country) P.O. Box 385 Pymble NSW 2073 AUSTRALIA	
Date of deposit 27 MARCH 1997 (27/03/97)	Accession Number NM97/04997
C. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) This information is continued on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/>	
BS 210 cells (<u>E. coli</u> transformed with plasmid pBS210)	
D. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE (if the indications are not for all designated States)	
E. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable)	
The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later (specify the general nature of the indications e.g., "Accession Number of Deposit")	

For receiving Office use only	
<input type="checkbox"/>	This sheet was received with the international application
Authorized officer	

For International Bureau use only	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	This sheet was received by the International Bureau on:
29 APR 1997	
Authorized officer	
	

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

INDICATIONS RELATING TO A DEPOSITED MICROORGANISM

(PCT Rule 13bis)

A. The indications made below relate to the microorganism referred to in the description on page <u>39</u> line <u>15-28</u>	
B. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Name of depositary institution AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT ANALYTICAL LABORATORIES	
Address of depositary institution (including postal code and country) P.O. Box 385 Pymble NSW 2073 AUSTRALIA	
Date of deposit 27 MARCH 1997 (27/03/97)	Accession Number NM97/04998
C. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) This information is continued on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/>	
BS 229 cells (<u>E.coli</u> transformed with plasmid pBS 229)	
D. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE (if the indications are not for all designated States)	
E. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable)	
The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later (specify the general nature of the indications e.g., "Accession Number of Deposit")	

<p>For receiving Office use only</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received with the international application</p> <p>Authorized officer</p>	<p>For International Bureau use only</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received by the International Bureau on: 29 APR 1997</p> <p>Authorized officer </p>
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

INDICATIONS RELATING TO A DEPOSITED MICROORGANISM

(PCT Rule 13bis)

A. The indications made below relate to the microorganism referred to in the description on page <u>34</u> line <u>21 - 30</u>	
B. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Name of depositary institution AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT ANALYTICAL LABORATORIES	
Address of depositary institution (including postal code and country) P.O. Box 385 Pymble NSW 2073 AUSTRALIA	
Date of deposit 27 MARCH 1997 (27/03/97)	Accession Number NM97/04999
C. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) This information is continued on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/>	
Plasmid pBS266	
D. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE (if the indications are not for all designated States)	
E. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable)	
The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later (specify the general nature of the indications e.g. "Accession Number of Deposit")	
For receiving Office use only	For International Bureau use only
<input type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received with the international application	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received by the International Bureau on: 29 APR 1997
Authorized officer	Authorized officer <i>mmo</i>

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

INDICATIONS RELATING TO A DEPOSITED MICROORGANISM

(PCT Rule 13bis)

A. The indications made below relate to the microorganism referred to in the description on page <u>34</u> line <u>21 - 30</u>	
B. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/>	
Name of depositary institution AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT ANALYTICAL LABORATORIES	
Address of depositary institution (including postal code and country) P.O. Box 385 Pymble NSW 2073 AUSTRALIA	
Date of deposit 27 MARCH 1997 (27/03/97)	Accession Number NM97/05000
C. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable) This information is continued on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/>	
Plasmid pBS267	
D. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE (if the indications are not for all designated States)	
E. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS (leave blank if not applicable)	
The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later (specify the general nature of the indications e.g., "Accession Number of Deposit")	

For receiving Office use only	
<input type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received with the international application	
Authorized officer	

For International Bureau use only	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received by the International Bureau on:	
29 APR 1997	
Authorized officer 	

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No.
PCT/AU 97/00197

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER																						
Int Cl ⁶ : C12N 15/11, 15/53																						
According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC																						
B. FIELDS SEARCHED																						
Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols) WPAT, CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS - Keywords below																						
Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched JAPIO, MEDLINE - Keywords below																						
Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used) WPAT, JAPIO, CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS, MEDLINE - Keywords: recombinase (WPAT, JAPIO); genetic vectors, recombination (control terms), recombinase (CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS, MEDLINE)																						
C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT																						
Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.																				
A	WO 93/01283 (THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA - THE SECRETARY OF AGRICULTURE) published 21 January 1993, epd 8 July 1991 (see entire document)	1-70																				
A	Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, Vol. 88, December 1991, E.C.Dalc & D.W.Ow, "Gene transfer with subsequent removal of the selection gene from the host genome", pp. 10558-10562 (see entire document)	1-70																				
A	Plant Molecular Biology, Vol. 18, 1992, C.C.Bayley <i>et al.</i> , "Exchange of gene activity in transgenic plants catalyzed by the Cre-lox site-specific recombination system", pp. 353-361 (see entire document)	1-70																				
<input type="checkbox"/> Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> See patent family annex																						
<p>* Special categories of cited documents:</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>"A"</td> <td>document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance</td> <td>"I"</td> <td>later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention</td> </tr> <tr> <td>"E"</td> <td>earlier document but published on or after the international filing date</td> <td>"X"</td> <td>document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone</td> </tr> <tr> <td>"L"</td> <td>document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)</td> <td>"Y"</td> <td>document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art</td> </tr> <tr> <td>"O"</td> <td>document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means</td> <td>"&"</td> <td>document member of the same patent family</td> </tr> <tr> <td>"P"</td> <td>document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </table>			"A"	document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance	"I"	later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention	"E"	earlier document but published on or after the international filing date	"X"	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone	"L"	document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	"Y"	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art	"O"	document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means	"&"	document member of the same patent family	"P"	document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed		
"A"	document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance	"I"	later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention																			
"E"	earlier document but published on or after the international filing date	"X"	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone																			
"L"	document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	"Y"	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art																			
"O"	document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means	"&"	document member of the same patent family																			
"P"	document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed																					
Date of the actual completion of the international search 16 June 1997		Date of mailing of the international search report 26 JUN 1997																				
Name and mailing address of the ISA/AU AUSTRALIAN INDUSTRIAL PROPERTY ORGANISATION PO BOX 200 WODEN ACT 2606 AUSTRALIA Facsimile No.: (06) 285 3929		Authorized officer J.H. CHAN Telephone No.: (06) 283 2340																				

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

PCT/AU 97/00197

This Annex lists the known "A" publication level patent family members relating to the patent documents cited in the above-mentioned international search report. The Australian Patent Office is in no way liable for these particulars which are merely given for the purpose of information.

Patent Document Cited in Search Report		Patent Family Member	
WO	93/01283	CA	2 073 412

END OF ANNEX

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)